## 以夸克和旋元佑为蓝本的英语笔记

作 者: 蛋疼的蛋蛋

日 期: 2024年10月

https://github.com/sd44/grammar-club

仅以此笔记献给我的孩子子墨和子韩

## 目录

景目			iii
插图象	閝	)	ĸiii
表格索	幫	I	xv
Todo	列	J表 x	vii
前言			xix
本	书	采用的语法术语	xix
赵	元	任的英语学习经验	xx
旋	元位	佑的英语学习经验	xxi
第一	部	分 初级句型——简单句	1
第一章	ř	基本句型及补语	3
1.	1	句子成分基本概念	3
1.	2	五种单句的基本句型	4
1.	3	不必翻译的动词: be 动词	5
1.	4	需要补语的动词有哪些?	5
1.	5	宾语补语的句型	7
1.	6	补语的词类	8
1.	7	没有补语的 be 动词 ······	9
1.	8	有两个宾语的句型	9
1.	9	动词的类型	10
1.	10	感叹句	10
1.	11	状语	11
1.	12	其他概念	11
1.	13	Test ····	11

io 目录

第二章	名词短语与冠词	13
2.1	名词短语	13
2.2	什么时候不需要用限定词?	14
2.3	专有名词与补语位置	15
2.4	定冠词 the 的用法	16
2.5	定冠词与专有名词	18
2.6	Test ····	20
2.7	Answer	22
2.8	不规则名词复数	24
2.9	限定词	26
	2.9.1 前中后位限定词	26
	2.9.2 类指	27
2.10	属格	28
	2.10.1 归属于: 属格和 of 结构	28
	2.10.2 独立属格 (THE INDEPENDENT GENITIVE) ····································	29
	2.10.3 后置属格(双重属格)	29
	2.10.4 带 of- 短语的同位关系	30
2.11	平行结构	30
Esta — A — 3-A		
	代词和数词	33
3.1	人称代词	33
3.2	代用的 it	34
3.3	反身代词	34
3.4	前指、后指、实景所指和先行词	35
3.5	不定代词	36
3.6	数词	37
	3.6.1 时间	39
	3.6.2 分数	39
	3.6.3 数学符号	40
第四章	<b>动词</b>	43
4.1	时 (tense) 体 (aspect) ·······	43
4.2	不存在的将来时	43
4.3	动词功能分类	44
4.4	动词的第三人称单数及名词复数 -s	45
		45

目录 v

	4.4.2 不规则动词屈折变化	46
4.5	(半)情态助动词	46
4.6	动词短语	47
4.7	简化英语时态	47
	4.7.1 过去时间	47
	4.7.2 现在时间	48
	4.7.3 未来时间	49
	4.7.4 完成体	50
4.8	Test ····	51
	4.8.1 练习一	51
	4.8.2 练习二	52
4.9	Answer····	53
	4.9.1 练习一答案	53
	4.9.2 练习二答案	54
<b>学工</b>	不会一	<b>-</b> 7
<b>第五章</b> 5.1	<b>不定式</b> 带 to 与不带 to 的不定式 ····································	<b>57</b> 57
5.1	to 与助动词的共同点	57
J.Z	5.2.1 后面都要用动词原形	58
	5.2.2 都有"不确定"的语气	58
	5.2.2 和時 子确定 的语气         5.2.3 都要用完成式来表达相对的过去时间	59
	5.2.4 所有重要的情态助动词,都可以改写为不定式	60
5.3		
5.4	接不定式和 -ing 从句皆可的动词 ····································	61
5.5	使役动词与不带 to 的不定式	63
5.6	感官动词与不带 to 的不定式	64
5.7	Test	65
5.8	Answer	67
第六章	动名词	<b>71</b>
6.1	动名词的特性	71
	6.1.1 动名词与普通名词的比较	71
	6.1.2 动名词短语与名词从句的比较	72
6.2	动名词的一些变化	73
	6.2.1 复合字	73
	6.2.2 主词不能省略时的处理方式	74

	6.2.3 动名词的被动态: being Ven	74
6.3	动名词与现在分词的分辨	75
6.4	结语	76
6.5	Test ·····	76
	6.5.1 练习一	76
	6.5.2 练习二	76
6.6	Answer	78
	6.6.1 练习一答案	78
	6.6.2 练习二答案	78
第七章	分词	81
7.1	分词与形容词的比较	81
	7.1.1 现在分词与形容词的关系	81
	7.1.2 分词与形容词的关系	82
	7.1.3 分词形容词	83
7.2	现在分词与过去分词词缀分析	85
7.3	Test ·····	85
7.4	Answer·····	87
第八章	形容词	89
8.1	定语和表语	89
8.2	以 -ly 结尾的形容词 ····································	89
8.3	形容词和副词的同音同形异义词	90
8.4	以 a- 开头的形容词和副词 ······	94
8.5	形容词的位置	94
	8.5.1 形容词的后置	95
8.6	可作名词短语中心语的形容词	96
8.7	名词短语中形容词的顺序	96
8.8	Test ····	97
8.9	Answer	99
第九章	副词	103
9.1		103
9.2	形容词构成开放式 -ly 副词的规则	
9.3	附加副词和连词	
	9.3.1 联加副词和连词	104

目录 vii

		9.3.2 附加副词和连词	104
ç	9.4	副词作介词补足语	105
9		副词小品词 up, down, back, away 等 ······ 1	
9	9.6	形容词和副词的比较级	
		9.6.1 可分等级的形容词和副词类型	107
		9.6.2 不规则的比较级、最高级形式	
		9.6.3 规则的比较级屈折变化	108
		9.6.4 屈折法比较和迂回法比较之间的选择	109
		9.6.5 比较级和最高级中 the 的用法	
		9.6.6 比较级的前置修饰语	
9	9.7	方法、状态的副词(Adverbs of Manner) ······ 1	
		9.7.1 S+V ······	
		9.7.2 S+V+C	
		9.7.3 S+V+O	
		9.7.4 S+V+O+O	
		9.7.5 S+V+O+C	
9		频率副词	
9	9.9	强调语气的副词(Intensifiers) ······· 1	
		9.9.1 强调范围的副词(Focusing Adverbs) ······ 1	
		9.9.2 加强语气的副词(INTENSIFIERS) ····································	
		9.9.3 程度副词(Adverbs of Degree) ···································	
9	9.10	修饰句子的副词(Sentence Modifiers) ······ 1	116
		9.10.1 连接副词(Conjuncts) ····································	116
		9.10.2 分离副词(Disjuncts)	116
第十	音:	大语的语义和语法 1	119
		状语按语义分类 ······· 1	
		可构成状语的词类	
		<b>状语的位置</b>	
		10.3.1 各类状语位置	
		10.3.2 分裂不定式	
1	10.4	Test	123
1	10.5	Answer 1	125
keke I	مرديد	No.	160
	_		129
1	11.1	叙述事实语气	129

viii 目录

11.2	条件语气	
	11.2.1 表达时间的功能不完整	130
	11.2.2 用完成式表达对过去的猜测	
11.3	虚拟语气	
	11.3.1 现在时虚拟语气	131
	11.3.2 过去时虚拟语气	132
11.4	假设条件从句	
	11.4.1 假设过去时	134
	11.4.2 假设过去完成时	
	11.4.3 混合时间的变化	
	11.4.4 一假设、一陈述句	
	祈使语气	
	Test ····	
11.7	Answer····	138
第十二章		141
	- <b>介岡</b> - 介词短语 ····································	
	介词补语	
	介词、连接词和动词	
	分词作边缘性介词、非限定动词或连接词	
	介词后置	
	简单介词和复杂介词	
	按表示关系分类	
12.7	12.7.1 表示空间关系的介词	
	12.7.2 表示时间的介词	
	12.7.3 表示原因和目的的介词	
	12.7.4 表示由手段到刺激因素的介词	
	12.7.5 表示材料、成分的介词 with, of, from ····································	
	12.7.6 基于某标准规格、方面或角色 for, at, as ···································	
	12.7.7 from to / from through	
12.8		
	Test	
	Answer ·····	

155

第十三章 主语-谓语一致

EI录 ix

	[ 主谓一致和就近原则	
	2 主语是一个还是两个人 (或物)?	
13.3	3 主语是哪一个?	158
13.4	4 主语中有 every、each、either、neither 等表示"一"的字眼时	161
	5 主语是关系代词时	
13.6	6 以单位做主语时	162
13.7	7 主语后面有介词短语时	163
	13.7.1 一般情形	
13.8	3 主语为空的字眼时	164
	13.8.1 a number / the number 的判断 ······	
	13.8.2 a pair of 的判断 ·······	
	9 集合名词	
13.1	10 一些以 s 结尾的名词	167
<b>第</b> 4元	章 替代形式和省略	169
	# <b>6100201#6#</b> 6 L 替代形式 ····································	
111	14.1.1 the same	
	14.1.2 one, ones, some ····································	
	14.1.3 so ······	
14.2	2 省略	
	14.2.1 省略是省约的一种	
	14.2.2 省略的位置分类	171
14.3	3 省略的还原类型	171
	14.3.1 实境省略	171
	14.3.2 结构省略	171
<i>₩</i> 1. <del>*</del> =		150
	<b>章 简单句</b> L 简单句和多重句 ····································	173
	1 同年刊和多重刊 ····································	
13.2	2	
	15.2.2 从句否定	
	15.2.2 从可否定	
	15.2.4 谓体否定	
	15.2.5 否定的范围	
	15.2.6 语音可表明否定的焦点	
15.0	3 句子类型和话语功能 ····································	
10.0	<b>,り)大王仰仰仰が</b> に	T//

15.3.1 Wh- 疑问句 ······ 178	
15.3.2 其他疑问句	
第二部分 中级句型——多重句 181	
第十六章 联合句或并列句          183	
16.1 并列连词 and, or, but ······ 183	
16.2 关联连词 both and, either or, neither nor ············ 183	
16.3 准并列连词	
16.4 Test	
16.5 Answer	
第十七章 复合句 189	
17.1 从句和领句	
17.2 限定性、非限定性动词和从句	
17.2.1 限定性和非限定性动词	
17.2.2 从句的结构类别	
17.3 从句的功能类别	
17.4 从属连词	
17.5 非限定性从句省略方法	
17.6 无动词从句省略方法	
17.7 时间性 since- 从句的完成时	
17.8 其他时间从句的完成时	
17.9 直接引语和间接引语	
17.10 间接陈述句、疑问句、感叹句和祈使句	
第十八章 名词从句 195	
18.1 名词从句分类	
18.2 名词性 that- 从句 ······· 195	
18.3 wh- 疑问从句 ······ 196	
18.4 名词性 yes-no 和选择疑问句 ······ 197	
18.5 名词性关系从句 ······ 197	
18.6 名词性 to 不定式从句	
18.7 名词性 -ing 从句 ······ 199	
18.8 不带 to 的不定式从句 200	

目录 xi

第二十三	章 动词和形容词的补足关系	233
第三部	分 高级句型——简化从句	231
22.7	SO that M Such that	<i>22</i> 9
	so that 和 such that ·······	
	enough 和 too······	
	等量比较 as as·······	
	部分对比 (partial contrast) ····································	
	比较从句中的省略	
	比较句的结构 ····································	
ローエー コー	章 比较从句	225
21.7	Answer····	222
21.6	Test ·····	219
21.5	句子关系从句	218
21.4	whose 和 of which ······	218
21.3	形容词性关系代词	217
21.2	限制性和非限制性关系分句	215
21.1	形容词性关系从句和关系副词从句的异同	215
第二十一	章 形容词性关系从句	215
20.2	关系副词与介词短语的替代	213
20.1	关系副词从句与状语从句的区别	213
第二十章	关系副词从句	213
19.6	Answer	210
	Test	
	非限定状语从句和无动词状语从句	
	状语从句与名词从句的比较	
	状语从句与并列从句的比较	
	状语从句的从属连接词	
第十九章	大语从句	205
10.10	) THOWE	200
	Answer ······	
18.0	Test ·····	200

23.1	多词动词	233
	23.1.1 不及物短语动词	234
	23.1.2 及物短语动词	234
	23.1.3 第一类介词动词	235
	23.1.4 第二类介词动词	236
	23.1.5 短语介词短语	236
23.2	动词补足语	237
	23.2.1 不及物动词	237
	23.2.2 动词补足关系的分类	238
	23.2.3 系词补足关系	238
	23.2.4 单宾语及物补足关系	238
	23.2.5 复合及物 (SVOC 和 SVOA) 的补足关系 ····································	240
	23.2.6 双宾语及物 (SVOO) 补足关系	241
23.3	形容词的补足关系	241
	章  名词短语	243
24.1	名词短语的构成部分	243
24.2	限制性关系从句作后置修饰语	
	24.2.1 非限定性从句作后置修饰语	
	24.2.2 用介词短语作后置修饰语	
24.3	名词化	247
24.4	后置修饰的次要类型	247
	24.4.1 副词短语作后置修饰	247
	章 主位 (Theme)、中心 (Focus) 和信息处理 (Information pro-	
cess	<i>-</i>	249
	前置 (Fronting) ······	
	倒装 (Inversion)·····	
	分裂句和假拟分裂句	
25.4	存在句	253
mr.⇒ •	pa →	
附录 A	<b>图衣</b>	255
索引		265
邓川		<b>∠</b> 03

插图索引 xiii

# 插图索引

1.1	句子成分与短语词类对应表	3
	英语全时态 12 种 (1) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
9.1	最常用作介词补足语的时间副词	106
12.1	表示空间关系的部分介词	145
	Gimson 英语音标 ····································	

# 表格索引

1.2	be, do, have 以外其他系动词 ····································	6
1.3	结果系动词 become, get, go, turn 与形容词 ····································	6
2.4	名词短语中限定词的位置	27
3.1	人称代词的主格、宾格、反身以及物主代词	33
3.2	反身代词的功能	35
3.3	主要的不定代词和限定词	36
3.4	基数词和序数词	38
4.1	情态助动词到主要动词的递差度表	46
4.2	动词短语	47
5.1	情态助动词可改写为不定式(半助动词)	60
7.1	表示感受的分词形容词	83
9.1	形容词和副词的比较级	107
9.2	不规则的比较级和最高级	108
11.1	假设条件句中的动词时态	133
12.1	介词和连接词后面的结构	142
12.2	可用作副词的介词	151
14.1	省略标准的递差——从省略到其他省约	170
17.1	直接引语到间接引语的时态后移	193
17.2	间接句型及其连接词	194
18.1	疑问句与疑问从句的 wh- 词及其词性	196
21.1	形容词性关系代词	217
21.2	关系代词可以在关系从句中充当的成分	217

xvi

23.1	动词补足关系的类型	239
23.2	作宾语的非限定性从句	240
23.3	SVOC 和 SVOA 中的非限定性从句 ······	241
23.4	宾语和介词宾语	242
23.5	形容词补足语类型	242
	不规则动词	
A.2	不规则名词复数	259
A.3	主要前缀	261
A.4	主要后缀	263

# TODO 列表

either 与 both, neither 与 no/none 的差别 5	37
■ 更新后面只接动名词或不定式的动词。	51
■ 夸克的从句分类方法与其他一些语法书不同,比较复杂,暂且不论。 1	73
■ 根据夸克大全 14.11 续写	91
■本笔记对状语较少描述,以后可从 The Gramma Book 等简明书籍中摘录。. 20	)5
■ 补全存在句和分裂句意思	45
■ 大全 17.30 看不懂,需补充	46
■ 何时用 to 不定式,何时用介词 +ing,夸克说的较乱,我理解困难,日后整理。24	46

## 前言

本笔记大部分内容来源于对夸克等人所著《A Comprehensive grammar of the English language》(中译版名为《英语语法大全》华东师范大学出版社)的极简摘抄整合,较少部分源自旋元佑《语法俱乐部》和其他资料。

依照夸尔所言,对于英语来说并不存在语法学家编纂的学院式语法,更多是**惯用法**(**USAGE**),属于**社会语言学范畴**。所谓语法,主要是根据社会语言流变而流变,而非相反。单纯学习语法并不会熟练掌握英语,还需多多增加语料输入输出噢。

英语语法单位(从大到小)可分为:句子(SENTENCES),从句(CLAUSES),短语(PHRASES),单词(WORDS),词素(MORPHEME,如词缀、后缀、词态变化等)。本笔记对短语、单词和词素的描述较少,着重于更为抽象、一般的句法。

- 句法 (SYNTAX) 如陈述句、疑问、祈式句等;句子的主从关系、简化复合或时态变化等。
- 词法 (MORPHOLOGY) 单词的曲折变化 (INFLECTIONS, 也称词态变化 ACCIDENCE), 如动词的过去分词、现在分词、过去式、第三人称单数等变化。

网友 G.Bai 认为:一般来说,句法 syntax > 语法 grammar > 语义 semantics,英语应试教育中对于这三个层面的分析都会灵活出现,哪怕简单如中考英语。

本书可以作为参考工具书,只看自己能够理解或者需要的内容,不必苛求。能懂多少就看多少。当然,也可以完全不看,哈哈。

#### 本书采用的语法术语

英语学习术语多种多样,眼花缭乱,常常数个术语同指一体,常使人不知何去何从;但如要学习,势必要择一而行。我作此笔记的主要动机,便是想向孩子全面系统说明被 广泛认可的句法概念。最终使用的是语法权威夸克等人的术语。夸克术语与国内语法较 大的差异有:

一、如国内语法多用**定语从句**这个概念,与之对应的是国外常用(也是夸克所用)的 几个关系从句。可以简单粗暴认为:

定语从句 = 形容词性关系从句(见第二十一章) + 关系副词从句(见第二十章)

另外**名词从句**(见第十八章)容易与之搞混,且名词从句中还包含 **that 陈述分句** 和**名词关系从句**,术语概念的多而杂加重了英语的学习难度。

- 二、国内多将假设从句并入虚拟语气,而夸克、Bas Aarts等人一般认为虚拟语气的真正残留只有一个了——过去式 WERE 虚拟语气(见 11.3 节),将假设从句(见 11.4 节)单独论述,本书也是采用这个体系。
- 三、碍于篇章编排,17.2节限定性、非限定性动词和从句一节放在了后面,但本节之前也涉及了这部分概念,有余力的读者可以先行了解。

其实要理解这些概念, 在起初是要费些力气, 但功在日后, 为日后直接阅读纯英文语法书打下基础。当然, 如有能力, 最好还是直接阅读英语原版语法书。

另外英语学习,单词和语法字典是必备的,建议电脑安装 goldendict-ng (免费)或者欧陆词典(收费),另外到 https://forum.freemdict.com 下载相应配套字典。

下面我们介绍下赵元任和旋元佑二人的英语学习经验吧。

#### 赵元任的英语学习经验

我觉得赵元任的学习方法基本是人为营造类母语环境,需要一个水平高的老师或者 一套好的多媒体教材。有意思的是,崇尚外语学习环境的赵元任反而主张和母语结合的 理解。以下摘自知乎。

赵元任先生,被誉为"中国现代语言学之父",他精通英、德、法、日、俄、希腊、拉丁等7门外语,会说33种中国方言,二战期间在哈佛大学开设了两期十个月的汉语培训班,几乎所有学生汉语水平都进步神速,完全可以应付日常汉语交际,其中几个学生后来还成为了中国研究专家。

赵元任先生认为,语言是一套习惯,**学习外语就是养成一套特别的习惯**。而习惯这东西,养成容易改变难,所以"小孩儿从没有习惯起头,养成习惯容易,大人已经有了母语习惯,再改成外语习惯就比较难"。

学习外语的内容,分成发音、语法、词汇三个主要部分,学习的次序也是按照这三 样按步进行。

发音的部分最难,也最要紧,因为语言的本身、语言的质地就是发音。发音不对,文法就不对,词汇就不对。但在全世界所有语言中,音素一共也就几十种。发音的重点在 弄清"外语中有、母语中无"的音,并在开始学的两三个礼拜把发音习惯弄好。

再说**语法**。懂得语法与会用语法,是两个概念。为使初学的学生学会语法,在开始时,应该把词汇加得很慢,**用很少的词来把基本的语法反复练习**。这样才可以学到"会"的程度。不经练习,是实现不了"会"的。

最后说**词**汇。**学词汇的时候,得在句子、短语中学习词的用法,**记的时候,如果只记外语对应母语的意思,那么一定学不好。**记短语,记句子**,这样所记的词汇的意思才能靠得住。因此,记的句子越多越好,这样有了若干数目句子的积累,词的用法也就会了。

不论大人小孩儿,外国语言的学习,都应**尽量全语言浸润式地学,尽量少掺杂母语**。 语言,是需要大量的接触与重复才能真正掌握的。

#### 旋元佑的英语学习经验

旋元佑的学习方法基本上偏应试教育法,适合环境或语料输入输出都有所缺失的学习者。有意思的是,应试法的旋元佑做出的理解往往非学院派,而是经验派。虽然有些明显错误,但相当生动,并且便于理解。以下摘自旋元佑《语法俱乐部》序言。

我(旋元佑)是进了初中才开始接触到英语。初一的班导师是英语老师,他叫我们要**勤查字典**,我也就乖乖地**查了三年字典,背了些单词**,也生吞活剥地记了些语法规则。 在那种年纪,记忆力好,理解力差,也不会想去把语法弄懂,背下来就算了!

高中读的是新竹中学, 高一的班导师也是英语老师, 他要我们开始使用**英英字典**, 于是我就查了三年英英字典。这在高中阶段我觉得是不错的训练, 可以避免在两种完全不同语系的单词间硬套, 同时也可以训练阅读, 以及培养用英语思考的习惯。

**一本好的语法书**,对学英语的人有多么大的帮助!汤老师那套语法书就是这样的好书。只不过完全用英语写成,要自习不大容易。此后我再也没有看过一本够好的语法书。大学我念的是师大英语系,大一班导师当然也是英语老师。他要我们**丢开字典、大量阅读、要有一个晚上看完一本小说的能力**。

我不管老师上课时怎么跳,晚上一**定把书本逐字逐句看完**。当然有看不懂的,也有不认识的字。不过我是以"看完"为目的,不懂也就算了。除了课本,另有一些重要的典籍与作品,像圣经、希腊罗马神话与经典小说等等,我都到图书馆去借来看。好在这些东西都是经过时间试炼的名作,不必勉强自己,看下去自然会欲罢不能。看这些东西,感官刺激虽不如看电影,可是它比电影多一层**想象的空间,韵味无穷**,是电影无法企及的。就这样,我轻松愉快地念完了大学……"不求甚解"式读书方法。

研究所时大概一个晚上要看一本小说。这一段时间的**密集阅读**对我的英语能力有"很大"的帮助。小说是最优美丰富的文字,戏剧用的是口语(不过 19 世纪的口语和现在颇不相同),诗歌是最浓缩的语言,散文比较平易近人,文学批评则是非常学术化的文体。这些东西看了一堆下来,大概各式各样的英语都可以应付了。

研究所毕业后,在元培医专、新竹科学园区实验中学教了一阵子的书,又回到台北,进入淡江英语系任教,并就近去读淡江的美国研究所博士班。在美研所所学,与其说对英语有什么帮助,不如说是**进一步了解了美国的社会、政治、文化背景**。话说回来,要真正懂一门语言,不了解那个国家和人民的话是办不到的,这一方面也就是我读美研所的收获。

之后从事教学工作,教学经验给我的帮助也很大。在从前教托福、GRE、GMAT 这些留学英语测验时,开始接触到词源分析,了解到英语单词的构成,也体会到**词源分析**是学习单词效果宏大的工具。

同时,为了教学所需,我以在师大学的教材教法为基础,再去阅读新的 ESL/EFL 教学理论,发现我误打误撞的那套"不求甚解"式阅读,竟然就是五种教学法之中最适合国内学习者需求的"阅读法"(the Reading Approach)。这种方法不需要外在有英语环境,只要找来适合自己程度的英语文章,由浅入深阅读下去,常见的英语单词与常用的语法句型自然会大量出现,从上下文中就可以学会新的单词与用法,不需借助词典。

阅读法的作法,是将英文阅读分成四个步骤:精读 (Intensive Reading)、广读 (Extensive Reading)、略读 (Skimming)、扫描 (Scanning):

精读 借助文法翻译和句型分析,把一篇文章从单字到句型、甚至是文章的组织结构与时代文化背景,各方面全部要弄清楚。

**大部分人阅读英文一直都停留在精读的阶段**,所以阅读速度缓慢,阅读的份量因而也相当有限。结果就是一直有个无法突破的瓶颈,听、说、读、写各方面一直无法达到真正「流利」的程度。

- 广读 跟随个人兴趣,持续进行大量、快速、不求甚解的阅读。广读所需的工具,一是字源分析、一是句型分析。
- **略读** 快速翻阅一本书或一篇文章、抓重点。如果你为了写论文在找资料,在图书馆中找到五十本书、或者在网路上找到五百篇文章,想要快速了解一下哪几本书、哪几篇文章对你写论文有帮助,值得借阅或印出,那么你就得略读这些书籍或文章、快速掌握它的主题。
- 扫描 这个工作很像搜寻引擎的搜寻功能:以最短时间在一本书或一篇文章当中搜寻出你要找的内容在何处。考试时(如阅读测验)扫描能力会很有帮助。

略读与扫描都是后话, **最重要的工作还是广读**。读到一个程度, 累积了足够的 input, 就会有 output 出来——可以拿起笔来写了。

然后还要通过**文法句型的训练**,建立起从单句到复合句到减化从句的架构,写出来 的句子才能够正确又富于变化。

我学英语的经验,还有一个挑战要提——TIME。从前我只是偶尔看一下TIME,1980年代我开始在补习班讲授TIME。这时候不是看看就算了,而是要**完全弄懂**才能去教。

英语只是个工具,但是这个工具的学习可以说是永无止境。现代英语教学法中的 the General Approach 主张学习者应认清自己的学习风格,该怎么学应因人而异,要选择最适合自己学习风格的方法。我学习英语的经验也许不是每个人都适合,不过我觉得,好逸恶劳是大部分人的通病。如果你曾痛下决心把英语学好,却半途而废,不能持之以恒,那么我这套懒人的方法可能也适合你。只要找你爱看的书来,不必查字典,不求甚解,知道大概在说什么,能维持你阅读的兴趣就好了。或者找简单点的东西来看,或者找《TIME中文解读版》这类有深度、优美的文字来看,利用翻译、注解等等来了解文章在说什么

就够了。这样你自然能持续阅读下去,在不知不觉中吸收有意义的 input 。只是茶余饭后看看闲书,没有丝毫勉强,假以时日你的英语就会进步。

好了,让我们开始学习吧。本笔记不定期更新,可关注本笔记项目网站。作为个人笔记,本书没有更多照顾入门读者,错漏必然也很多。欢迎来信与我探讨,也可在网站的 ISSUE 栏留言。

项目网站: https://github.com/sd44/grammar-club

Email: sd44sd44@yeah.net<sub>o</sub>

# 第一部分 初级句型——简单句

### 第一章 基本句型及补语

#### 1.1 句子成分基本概念

常见句子成分主语、谓语、宾语、补语、状语的含义分别是:

- **主语** 主语是句子中**所要表达和描述的人或物**,是句子叙述的主体。它通常由**名词、代词、数词、名词化的形容词、不定式、动名词和主语从句等**来承担。在句子中,主语一般位于最前面。
- **谓语** 谓语是用来说明**主语所做的动作或处在的状态**。谓语通常由**动词或动词短语**构成, 并且一般放在主语之后。它是句子的**核心部分**,能够传达出主要的信息。
- **宾语** 宾语是动作的对象或承受者,常位于及物动词或介词后面。宾语可以由名词、代词、数词、不定式、动名词以及宾语从句等来担任。宾语回答"谁"或"什么"的问题。
- **补语** 补语是**对主语或宾语进行补充说明**的成分,通常放在谓语之后。补充说明可以涉及 **结果、程度、趋向等**方面,能够帮助更好地理解句子的意思。
- **状语** 状语用于修**饰动词、形容词、副词或整个句子**,提供关于**时间、地点、原因、目的等**信息。状语可以由**副词、不定式短语、介词短语以及从句**等来担任,一般放在谓语前面或者句首。

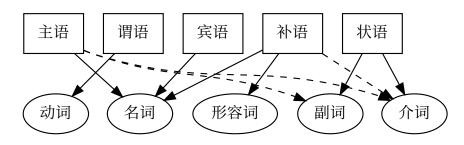


图 1.1: 句子成分与短语词类对应表

注:虚线箭头表示在特殊情况下,主语可以是副词短语和介词短语,补语可以是介词短语。

本章谈的是比较根本的句型问题。虽然简单,却是了解英语语法必要的基础。读者在阅读英语时不妨详加分析句型,触类旁通,相信会更有收获。

#### 1.2 五种单句的基本句型

1. S+V 主语 + 动词

2. S+V+O 主语 + 动词 + 宾语 S: 主语 Subject

3. S+V+C 主语 + 动词 + (主语) 补语 V: 动词 Verb

4. S+V+O+O 主语 + 动词 + (间接) 宾语 + (直接) 宾语 O: 宾语 Object

5. S+V+O+C 主语 + 动词 + 宾语 + (宾语)补语 C: 补语 Complement

虽然从初中开始就教五种基本句型,可是其中有两种(句型3和句型5)关于**补语**的句型,许多人恐怕一直没有真正搞清楚是怎么回事。

要了解补语,只需要研究那些解释为"是"的动词。基本句型分五种,是因为有五种特性不同的动词而造成的。**在所有的英语动词中,只有解释为"是"的动词(系动词)是空的,没有多少意义,也只有这种动词必须接补语来补足句子的意思**。

先回到出发点来说。一个完整的句子,必须能够表达完整的意思。这需要以两个部分来完成:主语和动词。**主语,是这个句子所叙述的对象。动词,构成叙述的主要内容**。例如:

- 1. John Smith died in World War Two. 约翰·史密斯死于第二次世界大战。
- 2. John Smith killed three enemy soldiers. 约翰·史密斯杀了三名敌军士兵。

在例 1 中,主语 John Smith 是这个句子所叙述的对象。讲白一点就是:这个句子要告诉你的是有关 John Smith 的事情。是什么事情呢?主要是:他"死了"(died)。动词 died 构成叙述的主要内容。至于说他死在第一次大战还是第二次大战,则是可有可无的细节,以介词短语 in World War Two 来表示,依附在动词上做修饰语使用。换句话说,例 1 如果只说 John Smith died,也可以构成意思完整、正确的句子。

像 die 这种动作,可以独立发生,不牵涉到别的人或物,这种动词就叫"**不及物**"动词。可是像例 2 中 kill 这种动作,就必须发生在另一个对象的身上。要做出"**杀**"的动作,得有个东西"**被杀**"才行,"杀"这种动词就叫"及物"动词,它后面通常必须跟着一个**宾语来"接受"这个动作**。例 2 中, killed 就是及物动词,而 three enemy soldiers 就是宾语。

接下来要进入重点所在了。在例 2 中, killed 虽然需要宾语, 可是句子最主要的内容还是在主语、动词这两个部分。主语部分告诉我们这个句子要叙述有关 John Smith 的事情; 动词部分叙述他做了个"杀"的动作。如果只说 John Smith killed, 那么这个句子还没有表达出完整的意思, 是不好的句子。可是, 它并非完全没有意义, 至少我们可以看出来, 有一个叫 John Smith 的人杀了个不晓得是什么的东西。

反之,如果句子**缺了补语,就会变得完全没有意义**,因为叙述的部分完全缺乏。请注意:在所有的英语动词中,只有解释为"是"的动词是空的,完全没有意义。一般的动词,不论及物或不及物,都要担任叙述全句最主要内容的工作。只有解释为"是"的动词,没有叙述能力,只能扮演引导叙述部分的角色。例如:

- John Smith was a soldier.
   约翰·史密斯是军人。
- 4. John Smith was courageous.

约翰·史密斯很勇敢。

在例 3 中主语 John Smith 不变,可是动词 was 就和前面的例子都不一样。这个动词并没有告诉我们有关 John Smith 这个人的任何事情。叙述主要内容的工作落在后面的 a soldier 之上。动词 was 只是把 John Smith 和 a soldier 之间画上等号、串联起来而已。

#### 1.3 不必翻译的动词: be 动词

例 4: John Smith was courageous 更明显,把它翻译成中文是"约翰·史密斯很勇敢"。请注意:在中文翻译中,动词"是"完全不见了!请进一步观察下面的例子:

- 太鲁阁峡谷很美。(Taroko Gorge is beautiful.)
- 汤太烫了。(The soup is too hot.)

在中文里,如果后面跟的是形容词,动词的"是"会被丢掉。好比上面这两个例子,如果说成"太鲁阁峡谷是美丽的"以及"汤是太烫的",就完全不像中文说话的口吻了。这个现象充分显示"是"这个动词是空的,完全没有意义。在英语中 is 是动词,不能丢掉,可是它不像一般动词能叙述主要内容,它是空的,没有任何意义。如果只说 John Smith was,或 Taroko Gorge is,或 The soup is,这些句子在一般的情况下都是错的,而且都没有意义,因为**动词"是"缺乏叙述能力**。

解释为"是"的动词没有叙述能力,只能把主语和后面构成叙述的部分连接起来,所以它又叫做"连系动词"或"系动词"(Linking Verb)。跟在这种动词后面的部分,因为替代了动词所扮演的叙述角色,补足句子使它获得完整的意思,称之为"补语"(Complement)。

#### 1.4 需要补语的动词有哪些?

be 动词直接翻译为"是",是最有代表性的"连系动词"。另外,在所有的英语动词中,凡是接补语的动词(也就是所有的"连系动词"),都可以解释为各种各样的"是"。

#### 请观察**以下这些"连系动词"**的翻译(见表 1.2 , 表 1.3 ):

系动词	不定式	系动词	不定式
存在系动词		结果系动词	
look	看起来是	become	成为
seem	似乎是	turn	转变为
appear	显得是	prove	证实为
sound	听起来是	get/go/grow [A]	见下表
feel	摸起来是		
smell [A]	闻起来是		
taste [A]	尝起来是		
make	做为		

表 1.2: be, do, have 以外其他系动词

become	get	go	turn
较正式		颜色、负面变化	颜色、天气变化
involved	used to	wrong	blue
clear	better	right	sour
accustomed	worse	bad	bad
pregnant	pregnant	white	red
extinct	tired	crazy	cold
famous	angry	bald	
ill	dark	blind	

表 1.3: 结果系动词 become, get, go, turn 与形容词

当然,"为"只不过是文言的"是"。以上这些动词就是类似 be 动词的最常见的"系动词"。一个主语如果配合其中任何一个做动词,都还不能构成一个有意义的完整句子,因为**这些动词都是空的字眼,需要补语来补足**。

再看看下面这些例子:

• That dress <u>looks</u> pretty.

那件裙子很好看。

a [A] 表示作系动词使用时, 其后只能接形容词。

b seem, appear, feel, sound 等后面常接 to be 不定式,直接接续名词短语不常见。

1.5 宾语补语的句型 7

The dog <u>seems</u> friendly.
 那条狗好像很友善。

His demands <u>appear</u> reasonable.
 他的要求显得很合理。

- His trip <u>sounds</u> exciting.
   他的旅行听起来很刺激。
- I <u>feel</u> sick. 我感觉不舒服。
- The drug <u>tastes</u> bitter. 药很苦。
- The story <u>proved</u> false. 故事经证实是捏造的。
- He <u>became</u> a teacher.
   他当了老师。
- A nurse <u>makes</u> a good wife.
   娶护士做太太真不错。

现在请做个小实验。把以上句子里的动词全部换成 be 动词, 也就是, 把各式各样的 "是"换成纯粹的是。有没有发觉, 这些句子的意思和句型, 都没有太大的改变? 这就是 "主语 + 动词 + 补语 (S+V+C)"的句型。凡是动词解释为各式各样的"是"的句子, 都属于这种句型。

#### 1.5 宾语补语的句型

了解主语补语的句型后,宾语补语的句型就容易了解了。主语补语的句型,是用补语告诉读者主语是什么,中间用"是"为动词串联起来。"主语 + 动词 + 宾语 + 补语 (S+V+O+C)"的句型,则是用补语告诉读者宾语是什么,中间暗示有一个"是"的关系存在。

请看看下面这些宾语接宾语补语的例子:

• I find the dress pretty.

我觉得这衣服很漂亮。

The meat made <u>the dog friendly</u>.
 肉让狗变得很友善。

- They consider <u>his demands reasonable</u>. 他们认为他的要求是合理的。
- He found the trip exciting.
   他觉得这次旅行很刺激。
- The food made <u>me sick</u>.
   这种食物使我想吐。
- I don't find the drug bitter.
   我并不觉得药很苦。
- I consider <u>the story false</u>. 我认为故事是捏造的。
- His college training made <u>him a teacher</u>.
   他的大学教育使他成为一名教师。
- Most people consider <u>a nurse a good wife</u>.
   大多数的人认为护士会是称职的太太。

就拿其中第一个例子 I find the dress pretty 来看,宾语 the dress 和补语 pretty 之间虽然没有"是"字,可是带有这种**暗示**存在。如果加个 be 动词进去,就变成刚才介绍主语补语的例子 The dress is pretty。上面所有宾语补语的例子都可以用同样的方法变成主语补语的句子。其实这也就是**检验 S+V+O+C 句型最简便的方法:** 把宾语和补语拿出来,**中间加 be 动词,看看能不能改成 S+V+C**。

#### 1.6 补语的词类

另外需要提一下补语的词类问题。这是在英语写作时常会出错的地方。**补语的词类,应该是名词和形容词比较合理**。因为主语或宾语都是名词,所以补语也可以是名词,经由"是"的连接来表达同等的关系。例 3 John Smith was a soldier 中,主语补语 a soldier 就是名词,经由动词"是"的连接来表达和主语 John Smith 同等的关系。如果把例 3 改成 The military academy made John Smith a soldier(军校训练约翰·史密斯成为军人),那么 John Smith 成为宾语,a soldier 也就成为宾语补语,词类则完全不变。

补语合理的词类,除了名词外还有形容词。因为主语和宾语都是名词,而修饰名词的修饰语就是形容词。在例 4 John Smith was courageous 中,主语补语 courageous 是形容词,因而可以经由动词"是"的引导来修饰主语 John Smith 是怎样的人。如果

把例 4 改成 I consider John Smith courageous (我认为约翰·史密斯很勇敢),那么 courageous 就成了宾语补语,词类当然还是形容词。

#### 1.7 没有补语的 be 动词

介绍完两种补语的句型,最后把 be 动词的用法做个补充。be 动词是最纯粹的 linking verb,解释为"是",后面应该要有补语才算完整。如果看到 be 动词后面没有补语,表示这个 be 动词并不是当做连系动词使用。这时候 be 动词并不解释为"是",而要解释为"存在",用在最单纯的"主语+动词(S+V)"的句型中。

例如,笛卡尔说的"我思故我在"这句话,被公认为现代哲学的开始。它的意思是: 人类因为能够思考,才能肯定自我的存在。原文是拉丁文 Cogito ergo sum。翻译成英语是 I think; therefore I am。再翻译成中文时,不能只看到 I am 就翻译成"我是"。 光说"我是"是没有意义的,因为动词"是"是空的字眼,必须有补语来交代"是什么"。 在没有补语的情形下,I am 就得翻译成"我存在"了。

再举一个例子。《哈姆雷特》中一段最有名的独白,是以 To be or not to be, that is the question 开始的,相信读者都看过。可是 To be or not to be 要怎么翻译呢? "我是"?这样翻译是毫无意义的,因为"是"是空的,不能没有补语。在这里因为没有补语,be 动词只能解释为"存在"。To be or not to be 就可以翻译为"要存在还是不要存在",也就是"要不要活下去"的意思。哈姆雷特是丹麦王子,因为叔父与母亲私通,害死他的父王,使他产生轻生的念头。这段独白就是他对生死问题的辩证。因为触及生命最核心的问题而成为千古绝唱。

#### 1.8 有两个宾语的句型

最后再谈谈 S+V+O+O 的句型, 那么五种基本句型就全部清楚了。有一种动词, 后面可以接两个宾语。例如:

John's father gave V
 约翰的父亲给他一只狗。

请想一想 gave 这个动词。要做"给"的动作,首先要有个东西:在上例中就是那只狗。然后,还得有人接受,才能给得出去:在上例中就是 him。这两个宾语,一个是给的对象(间接宾语),一个是给的东西(直接宾语),两个都是名词,可是并不相等。

可接双宾语的双及物动词还有 wish, left, send 等。

• We all wish you a happy birthday.

O

- She send V Jim a card.
   本句也可以改为 SVOA 型。
- She send  $\frac{\text{a card}}{\text{O}} \frac{\text{to him}}{\text{A}}$ .

这个句型要和另一种四个元素的句型 **S+V+O+C** 区分清楚,后者的宾语与补语也可以都是名词,可是**宾语与补语间存在有"等于是"的关系**。例如:

● John's <u>father</u> <u>called</u> <u>him</u> <u>a dog</u>. 约翰的父亲骂他是狗。

因为有"他是狗"的意思在, 所以 a dog 是 him 的补语。如果是 John's father gave him a dog 这一句, him 是给的对象, a dog 是给的东西, 两者并不相等, 所以并不是宾语与补语的关系, 两个都是宾语。

#### 1.9 动词的类型

不及物动词 (INTRANSITIVE) 后面不必跟有其他成分,出现在 SV 类型。

及物动词 (TRANSITIVE) 后面跟有宾语 (object), 可以细分为:

单及物动词 出现在 SVO 类型中。

**双及物动词** 出现在 SVOO 类型中。第一个宾语一般为**间接宾语**;第二个一般为**直接宾语**,更接近语言中心。

复合及物动词 出现在 SVOC 和 SVOA 类型中。

系动词 (LINKING VERB) 后面跟有主语补语或一个状语,出现在 SVC (例如 seem)和 SVA (例如 be)类型中。

更为复杂的动词补足语分析详见表 23.1。

#### 1.10 感叹句

先看看感叹句的句子成分吧:

- What  $\frac{\text{beautiful clothes}}{O}$   $\frac{\text{she}}{S}$   $\frac{\text{wears!}}{V}$
- How  $\frac{\text{well}}{A}$   $\frac{\text{Lucy}}{S}$   $\frac{\text{Plays}}{V}$   $\frac{\text{the piano}!}{O}$ !

感叹句一般保留正常的陈述句主语 + 谓语的语序。

#### 1.11 状语

暂不多讨论状语 Adverbial, 其位置多在从句句末, 但也可在句首及句中, 比较灵活, 可看以下语句先行了解。

- $\bullet \ \ \frac{My \ mother}{S} \ \ \frac{usually}{A} \ \ \frac{enjoys}{V} \ \ \frac{parties}{O} \ \ \frac{very \ much_{\circ}}{A}$
- $\bullet \ \, \frac{I}{S} \ \, \frac{have \ been}{V} \ \, \frac{in \ the \ garden}{A} \ \, \frac{all \ the \ time}{A} \ \, \frac{since \ lunch}{A}.$

#### 1.12 其他概念

普通句子中的补语(COMPLEMENT)(如主语补语、宾语补语)大家已经了解,夸克引入了一个相比句法而言更接近于**词法**的补语:补足语 (COMPLEMENTATION)。

**补足语** 补足语用来**补充说明**句子中某个成分的词或短语,以使句子的意义更加完整。补足语与其他功能,例名词修饰语或句子成分中的状语等有所重叠。

可以有(包括但不限于):

动词补足语 He deceived <u>his father</u>. [此句中的 his father 和主语补语重叠] 形容词补足语 Tickets are likely **to be expensive**.

介词补足语 The pen is on the table.

**递差 (GRADIENCE)** 语言中常常有两个或多个类别,彼此之间相近,但又有不同程度级别的差异(级差)。如表 4.1 情态助动词到主要动词的递差度表,表 9.1 形容词和副词的比较级等。

语法描述中存在的很多模棱两可、不明确之处多因递差而起。

GIVEN-BEFORE-NEW 先说已给定的旧信息,再说刚刚获取的新信息。

末尾焦点 (END FOCUS) 或末尾重心 (END WEIGHT) 原则 英语中短语或从句的末尾部分往往更复杂和重要,是信息焦点。

#### 1.13 Test

请判断以下各句属于五种基本句型中的哪一种?

- 1. The magician moved his fingers quickly.
- 2. The police found the letter missing.

- 3. The police found the missing letter.
- 4. He ordered himself a steak and a bottle of red wine.
- 5. Don't you like dancing?
- 6. The President has gone abroad on a visit.
- 7. That sounds like a good idea.
- 8. The box feels heavy.
- 9. He told his guests a dirty joke at the party.
- 10. The people elected Bill Clinton President.
- 11. The child asks her mother a million questions a day.
- 12. Monkeys love bananas.
- 13. You can leave the door open.
- 14. The company has gone bankrupt.
- 15. Why don't you answer me.
- 16. I consider you a member of the family.
- 17. It never rains in California.
- 18. You'll look better with these designer glasses on.
- 19. I can see better without these reading glasses.
- 20. Do you call me a liar.

# 第二章 名词短语与冠词

除了主语、宾语、补语这些主要元素外,介词后面所接的宾语往往也是名词短语,所以名词短语使用的频率极高。不过名词短语很容易出错,尤其是冠词的部分,写作时一不小心就会用错。一般语法书处理这个问题时,通常会列出一长串规则,再附注一大堆例外,这种语法书,坦白说对于学英语的人并没有太大的帮助。本章就要和读者一同来探讨名词短语,尤其是冠词的用法。本书中没有规则要背,自然也就不会有所谓的例外。只要经由理性的探讨,便足以涵盖传统文法所有的规则,而且更深入、更灵活。

## 2.1 名词短语

首先,英语是一种拼音文字,和其他**拼音文字一样,用词尾的变化来表示单、复数**。不仅如此,在名词短语的开头,还有一些词或短语来**配合标示该名词有何种所指**,是有定的 some-, all 还是不定的 a/an/any- 等,这种词或短语在语言学上称为"**限定词"(Determiners**)。它与词尾的单复数符号互相呼应,共同 determine 名词的范围。冠词就是 Determiners 之中的一种。请看下面的例子:

这几个名词短语都是由三个部分所构成。第一个部分(a, many, his, the, those 等)就是**限定词**,这个限定词决定第三个部分(book、students、wife 等),亦即**名词**部分的范围。中间的部分(new、good、beautiful 等)则是**形容词(前置修饰语)**,为补充说明名词中心语的成分,是可有可无的元素。

其实,**名词短语的这三个部分当中,每个部分都可以省略**。在 a new book 中,即使拿掉形容词,剩下 a book,这个名词短语还是正确的。同样地,在 the best answer 中如果拿掉名词,剩下 the best 也一样是正确的。例如:

a new book 一本新书

many good students 许多好学生

his beautiful wife 他美丽的妻子

the best answer 最好的答案

those sweet roses 那些芳香的玫瑰花

• Of these answers, this one is the best.

在这些答案中, 这个最好。

读者可以从上下文中清楚了解 the best 就是 the best answer 的意思。甚至在 those sweet roses 中,可以把形容词和名词一起拿掉,只剩下 those,仍是正确的名词短语。比如说,现实场景中,你指着一些玫瑰花,对花店老板说:

#### • I want those.

我要那种的。

老板就会知道你要的是什么。

## 2.2 什么时候不需要用限定词?

如果把 many good students 中的限定词 many 拿掉,剩下 good students,仍然是正确的。但如果把 a new book 中的限定词 a 拿掉,只剩下 new book,就变成一个错误的名词短语,而这种错误在写作时偏偏常犯,所以我们有必要进一步加以讨论。

从语源学(etymology)的角度来看,冠词 a(n) 可以视为 one 一字的弱化(reduction)结果。也就是说,a(n) 就代表 one 的意思,只是语气比较弱。 a(n) 与 one 同样都是在交代**它后面所接的名词是"一个"的概念**。如果后面的名词不适合以"一个"来交代,也就是不适合加 a(n) 的话,就可把限定词这个位置空下来。例如:

• <u>Unmarried men</u> are a rare species these days.

未婚男性目前是稀有品种了。

在名词短语 unmarried men 中,只有形容词(unmarried)和名词(men)两个部分,而没有限定词。这是因为 men 一字已清楚表示名词是复数,自然不能再用 an 来表示"一个",这时就可以把限定词省略。在 a new book 中,book 是单数形态,因此要用限定词来配合标示它。所以,如果只说 new book,就变成不完整的表示。

除了复数以外,表示状态、特性、活动的抽象名词(如 honesty、bribery)没有具体形状。不能以"一个"来表示。但表示单一现象(例如事件)的抽象名词例外。(例如 a meeting, a thing, arrivals)

物质名词(如 water、food)虽然是具体的东西,可是**形状不固定**,也不能以"一个"来表示。**这些不能以 a(n) 来引导的词就可以把限定词省略,即零冠词(the zero article)**。例如:

- <u>Honesty</u> is not necessarily the best policy. 诚实不一定是上策。
- <u>Fresh water</u> is a precious resource in Saudi Arabia.
   淡水是沙特阿拉伯的珍贵资源。

接着我们来处理一个比较复杂的问题: 专有名词。

## 2.3 专有名词与补语位置

人名(如 Genghis Khan)、地名(如 Taipei)等都是专有名词。因为它所代表的对象只有一个,也不适合加 a(n),所以可以不用限定词。为什么只有一个的东西也不能加 a(n) 呢? 因为如果用 a Genghis Khan 来代表成吉思汗,那么这里指的是 one Genghis Khan(一个成吉思汗)的意思。亦即在此句中暗示有第二个成吉思汗存在,所以才特别需要标示是"一个"。如果只有一个成吉思汗存在,就不必这样标示,只要说 Genghis Khan,大家也就知道在说谁了。加 a(n) 与加是一体的两面,我们用这两个符号分别来表示单、复数。如果一个名词不能加 -s (或者是作不规则复数变化),那么它也就不能加 a(n)。专有名词就是如此。

要判断一个名词是否为专有名词,有时并不是那么容易。像 Sunday 这种字,一个月中可能会有四到五天,所以我们可以说:

• There are **five Sundays** this month.

这个月有五个星期日。

这时候它就不算是专有名词。可是在一个星期中星期日只有一天, 所以我们也可以说:

• I have an appointment on **Sunday**.

我星期日有约。

这时它就是唯一的一天,也就算是专有名词。

实际上,可数与不可数只是根据"不同的**单位**来实现"(realized by different lexical items), **并无定然**。并且是在世俗流变之中,如 two cups of coffee 在现实中已可直说 two coffees。

放在补语位置的专有名词最难以判断。补语和主语(或宾语)之间有同等的关系,如果主语(或宾语)是专有名词(例如人名)的话,那么它的补语既然和它同等,便也会被当做是专有名词来使用,条件是在补语位置上的名词也必须具有"唯一"的性质。例如:

• Mr. Elson was **president** of the high school.

埃尔森先生曾是这所高中的校长。

本句中 Mr.Elson 是人名,而且没有第二个存在,所以不能加 the,也不能加 a,我们就可以不用限定词。而在补语位置上的 president 本来只是个普通名词,并不是只有这所高中才有校长,而且这所高中的校长历来也不只埃尔森先生一人。因此,"校长"为普通名词,而"埃尔森先生"为专有名词,两词性质本不相同。可是,因为在此句中"校长"是埃尔森先生的补语,可以和埃尔森先生划上一个等号,所以可用专有名词来诠释

它。再者,当时这所高中校长一职确实只有埃尔森先生一人,因此也支持这个诠释。所以 president 一词没有限定词。这就是把它当作专有名词的结果。再看下例:

• Some say he was a better president than Mr.Robert.

有人说他当校长, 比罗伯特先生干得更好。

在这个从句中,主语 he 就是埃尔森先生。president 仍然是主语补语,可是这里就要加 a 了。为什么?因为在上下文中和罗伯特先生做比较,这么一来就有前后两任校长,可以加,不是专有名词了。还有:

• Mr.Elson is also <u>a member</u> of the Council of the city.

埃尔森先生也是该城市政会委员。

本句中 a member of the Council 也是埃尔森先生的补语,类似 Council of the city。可是高中校长同一时间只有一人,**市政会委员则有很多人**,所以 a member 需要交代是"一名",而非专有名词。

另外, 当同位语是补语时, 注意是否为专有名词, 例如:

Martin Wales, <u>Head</u> of the football team, at the time, wore a mustache.
 马丁·韦尔斯, 当时的足球队长,留有小胡子。

句中 Head of the football team 一般称为同位语,其实就是 (who was) Head of the football team at the time 这个名词性关系从句的省略。其中 who 代表马丁·韦尔斯, 而 Head 则是主语补语,和马丁·韦尔斯是同等关系,所以仍然算是专有名词,不必用限定词。

写主语补语时,要注意该补语是否为专有名词。写宾语补语时也是一样。例如:

Clinton made Gore <u>campaign partner</u> of the Presidential election.
 克林顿选择戈尔为总统大选竞选搭档。

句中 campaign partner 没有限定词,当专有名词使用。因为它是"戈尔"的宾语补语,与其为同等关系。而副总统搭档只有一人,所以它便成为专有名词的用法。

## 2.4 定冠词 the 的用法

在语源学上, **the 可视为 that 或 those 的弱化形式**。而 that 或 those 是指示限定词,有明确的指示功能<sup>①</sup>。所以定冠词 the 也可以用同样的角度来了解:凡是上下文中有明指或暗示时,也就是有"那个"的指示功能时,便要用定冠词 the。请比较:

• I need **a book** to read on my trip.

我在旅途中需要带本书读。

① 此外, that, these 或 those 等物主代词也可做指示代词。如 This is a question.

• I have finished the book (which) you lent me.

我已把你借给我的书读完了。

在第一句中, a book 只是 one book 或 any book,并没有特别指定是哪一本。在第二句中, the book 就是 that book,特别指出是"你借我的那本"。因为明指出来,所以要用定冠词。请再比较:

• Modern history is my favorite subject.

现代史是我最喜欢的科目。

• The history of recent China is a sorry record.

中国近代史是部伤心史。

第一句 modern history 一词中,history 是抽象名词,不可数,因而没有 a。而在形容词位置上的 modern 只是附在 history 上的修饰语,并不算明确的指示,所以不必加 the。第二句中 the history of recent China(中国近代史)则有 of recent China附在后面,用来指出"那一段"历史。因为有这种指示性,所以必须在前面加上定冠词the,但也不要死背前、后修饰语的差别。再看看下面这一组例子:

He should be home; I saw <u>a light in his house</u>.
 他应该在家;我看见他家亮灯了。

**分号**; 用以连接两个以上独立句子, 但各句之间又有比句号更紧密的关系; 或者用以分隔并列, 但范畴略有差别的部分。

- On our vacation, we visited **London**, **England**; **Paris**, **France**; **Berlin**, **Germany**; **and Rome**, **Italy**.
- Turn off the portal light.

把门口的灯关掉。

第一句中虽然 a light 后面有 in his house 来修饰,可是一栋房子中电灯可能有数十个,如果看到有一个是亮的,仍然只能算是 one light,而不是 that light 。所以 in his house 虽然放在后面,但并不算是明确的指示,仍然要用 a light。相反的,在第二句中,叫人把大门口的灯关掉,在 the portal light 一词中的 portal,虽然是附在名词前面的形容词,可是有明确的指示功能,因为门口的灯通常只有一盏,所以已经指明了要关哪一盏灯,这时就要用 the light。总之,不必死背,但要先了解 a(n) 是来自于 one (一个),the 则是来自于 that/those (那个),再逐一判断。

另外,如果上下文中没有明确指出来,但有**清楚的暗示**,仍然要用定冠词 the。例如,先生对太太说:

• I'm going to the office now.

现在我要去办公室。

虽然 the office 后并没有明指,可是太太知道,就是老公上班的办公室,这时还是要用 the。再看下例:

### • Do you mind if I open **the window**?

我可以把这扇窗户打开吗?

当有人在公共汽车上向你这么说时,虽然在 window 前后没有指示性的字眼,可是对话的情境清楚暗示"就是你旁边这扇窗户",所以这时候还是要用 the 。如果用 a,就 变成:

### • Do you mind if I open a window?

我可以打开一扇窗户吗?

这时的意思便成为 any window,也就是对方要在整个公共汽车数十扇窗户中,随便挑一扇来打开,却先来征求你的同意。虽然这不是不可能,却是很奇怪的讲法。

## 2.5 定冠词与专有名词

专有名词的定义是:只有一个对象存在的名词,像 Genghis Khan 和 Taipei等。既然只有一个对象存在,就没有"这个"、"那个"的分别,也就不能加定冠词 the。如果你说 this book,则暗示还有 that book 的存在,这时就需要指明是 this book,也就是the book。像 Taipei 这种字就不能这样使用。所以,专有名词和定冠词是有冲突、且不能并存的。如果加了 the,就表示这个东西有两个以上,也就不是专有名词了。例如:

### • This is not **the John Smith** I know.

这不是我所认识的约翰·史密斯。

• This is a photography show of the Taipei 50 years ago.

这是表现50年前的台北的摄影展。

第一句暗示还有另一个约翰·史密斯存在,或是他有另外一面,是我所不认识的。这时有两个约翰·史密斯存在,所以"约翰·史密斯"就不再是专有名词,可以用 this 或 that 来区分,这也就是为什么写 the John Smith 的原因了。还有,"50 年前那个台北"这句话暗示和今日台北不同了,有两个台北。这时台北也就成了普通名词,可以指来指去,所以要用 the Taipei 50 years ago 来表示。

最后,在许多语法书上被列为例外,并要求学生背下来的东西,其实都非例外,反 而都是很容易了解的。比如,一**般语法书列出海洋、河流、群岛、群山、杂志名、船名** 等等,说这些是"要加定冠词的专有名词",是例外。但是,这种说法并非完全正确。首 先,这些清单并不周全。而且,大部分的人不是懒得背,就是背不下来。死背不但不能 变通,一碰到变化还是不会。现在我们就来看看这些所谓的例外: the Pacific (Ocean) 太平洋
the Atlantic (Ocean) 大西洋
the Indian Ocean 印度洋
the Mediterranean (Sea) 地中海
the Dead Sea 死海

在"太平洋"the Pacific (Ocean) 一词中,Pacific 是放在形容词的位置,字尾 -ic 是明显的形容词字尾。在名词位置上的 Ocean 其实是普通名词(世界上有三个洋。只要有两个以上就不算是专有名词),在此被省略掉。所以定冠词 the 是配合后面的普通名词 Ocean,指出"叫做 Pacific 的那个洋"。这是规规矩矩的用法,完全没有例外。在三大洋中只有印度洋不适合省略,因为 the Indian 可能会被误解为"这名印第安人"。同理,the Mediterranean (Sea) 是普通名词 the sea 加上形容词 Mediterranean,也不是例外。"地中海"可以省略 sea,因为省略之后仍然够清楚。但"死海"the Dead Sea 就不能省略,否则会被误会为"死人"the dead people。再看下面的例子:

- the Philippine Islands → the Philippines
   菲律宾群岛
- the Alp Mountains → the Alps
   阿尔卑斯山

这两个复数的"群岛"Islands、"群山"Mountains,也是普通名词。可是名词部分被省略掉,以形容词位置取代之,并且把复数的移到前面来。这也不是例外,只是很合理的**省略方式**罢了。同样的:

the Mississippi (River)密西西比河the Titanic (Ship)泰坦尼克号the Hilton (Hotel)希尔顿饭店the Times (Newspaper)希尔顿饭店

如果把这些名词短语的第三个部分还原,即可看出**它们的名词位置都是普通名词,所以都可以加冠词**。而所谓的专有名词都是放在**形容词位置的修饰语**,所以并不是什么例外,请看下面的例子:

the United States of America 美国 the United Nations 联合国

这两个例子中,在名词位置的其实都是普通名词(States, Nations),皆可加冠词。 只有 America 这个名词短语是专有名词,所以前面没有加冠词。 以上的叙述中, 重要观念有三:

- 一、名词短语包括限定词、形容词、名词三个部分。任一部分都可能省略。
- 二、如果名词短语中不用限定词,是因为该名词不适合加 a(n)。
- 三、a(n) 是 one 的弱化结果,而 the 是 that/those 的弱化结果。

冠词的问题基本上是写作时容易碰到的问题,阅读时要多加观察。在看文章的时候请留心名词短语,尤其是冠词的用法,就是最好的练习。

## **2.6** Test

### 请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

1.	The carpenter repaire	d		
	(A) the table's legs		(B) table's legs	
	(C) legs of the table	2	(D) the legs of the	table
2.	Mr. Smith has three _	_ under his name.		
	(A) shoe stores		(B) shoes stores	
	(C) shoe store		(D) shoestores	
3.	The house sits on a _	_ road.		
	(A) twelve feet in w	ridth	(B) of twelve feet	
	(C) twelve-foot-wid	le	(D) twelve-feet	
4.	These men and wome	en are all		
	(A) language's teac	hers	(B) languages teac	hers
	(C) language teach	ers	(D) languages' tead	cher
5.	He ordered for bre	eakfast.		
	(A) orange juice, br	ead and butter, cof	fee, and bacon, and	eggs
	(B) orange, juice, b	read, and butter, co	offee and bacon and	eggs
	(C) orange juice, br	ead and butter, cof	fee, and bacon and $\epsilon$	eggs
6.	The prime minister is	the real ruler and t	he prince is merely	a
	(A) little	(B) small	(C) nobody	(D) none
7.	Living in the city, he	was always being a	nnoyed by noises of	·
	(A) one sort of other	er	(B) one sort of the	other
	(C) one sort or ano	ther	(D) one or others s	orts
8.	Writing is one thing a	nd talking is quite	·	

	(A) the other		(B) another	
	(C) others		(D) the others	
9.	The majority of the	Members of Parlia	ment are men, but	there are
won	nen, of course.			
	(A) few		(B) little	
	(C) any		(D) quite a few	
10.	is what he said: D	Oon't go out!		
	(A) This	(B) That	(C) The	(D) These
11.	Whether you serve o	coffee or tea doesn't	matter; will do.	
	(A) any	(B) either	(C) some	(D) all
12.	As we have finished	the first chapter, no	w we will read	
	(A) second		(B) the second	
	(C) second one		(D) the two	
13.	He has two daughte	ers; one is a singer a	nd an actress.	
	(A) another		(B) other	
	(C) the other		(D) the others	
14.	He asked if eighty d	lollars was enough,	and I said that	twenty would
do.				
	(A) more		(B) another	
	(C) other		(D) the other	
15.	Mary Kurt, of the	e troupe, was strong	ly against smoking.	
	(A) alto	(B) the alto	(C) an alto	(D) altos
16.	This kind of ball-per	n holds ink than	that.	
	(A) less	(B) fewer	(C) much	(D) little
17.	John works harder t	than boy in his c	class.	
	(A) all other		(B) any other	
	(C) all the other		(D) any	
18.	I was told to take the	e pills six hours.		
	(A) each		(B) every	
	(C) other		(D) the other	
19.	The man was badly	wounded, but there	could still be ho	ppe.

(A) little

(B) few

(C) a little

(D) a few

20. \_\_ these people are going to the concert.

(A) The most

(B) Most of

(C) Most

(D) Almost

### 2.7 Answer

- 1. (D) 所有格有两种表示方式: 人与其他生物可用's 的形式, 非生物则用 of... 的介词短语形式来表示。本题的 table 是非生物, 故只能从 C 和 D 之间选择。因为有 of the table 修饰前面的 legs, 表示出来是"哪些"脚, 所以要有定冠词 the。
- 2. (A) 复合名词,前面的名词 shoe 放在**形容词位置**,只能用单数。后面的 store 要用复数,因为有限定词 three。D 的 shoestores 是错误拼法,两个词不能连起来。
- 3. (C) **名词短语**冠词(a)与名词(road)之间是**前置修饰语位置**,而且**只能放一个"重量"较轻的单词,不能放短语**(详见 8.5.1 节),故从 C 和 D 来选。既然是形容词,没有复数可言,故排除掉 D。

另外数字 + 名词 + 名词用于**测量**,数字通常用 en dash **连字符** (-) 连接到第一个名词上。请注意,在这些情况下,**第一个名词通常是单数形式**。

#### 例外有:

that savings bank saving 常作"节省"或"挽救"之意; savings 作"储蓄"之意。 several clothes hangers 几个衣架,单数的 cloth 意思是"布",必须拼成复数 clothes 才是"衣服"的意思。

your sports car 当谈论体育或一般的运动时,在英式英语中通常是不可数的 sport, 而在北美英语中则是复数的 sports。然而,在另一个名词之前,复数形式 sports 在 英式英语和北美英语中都有使用。

**damages negotiations** 赔偿谈判,单数的 damage 意思是"损害"、复数的 damages 才是"赔偿"。

- 4. "语言教师"是复合名词,故由 B 和 C 之间来选。前面 language 的位置是形容词位置,没有复数,故选 C。
- 5. bread and butter (奶油吐司) 是一种食品,两个词都不可数,不需要限定词,构成一个名词短语,因而中间不能有逗号。bacon and eggs (火腿蛋) 亦然。这里的 bacon不可数, eggs 是复数,亦不需要限定词。
  - 6. (C)nobody 意为 "无名小卒"时应作普通名词看待, 可加冠词 a。A 和 B 都是形

2.7 *ANSWER* 23

容词,不应置于冠词 a 后面当作名词用。none 是 no one 的复合字,其中的 no 就是限定词,所以前面不能再加冠词 a。

- 7. (C) one sort or another 表示 one sort or another sort, 是一个常用的短语, 意为"各种各样的"。
- 8. (B) 以 another (后面省略 thing) 和 one thing 相对,可以表示"不同的两件事",也是常用短语。
- 9. (D) C 的 any 只适用于否定句或疑问句。肯定句中的 any 要解释为"任何",在此亦不适合。B 的 little 要配合不可数名词才能用。在 A 与 D 之间,few 是否定的意味,a few 才能表示肯定,而 quite a few 则是加上强调语气的副词 quite 来表示"还不少"。上下文要求肯定语气(由连接词 but 可看出),故选 D。
- 10. (A) 用来表示上文讲过的一句话,可以用 this 或 that 作代词。例如: There's going to be a raise. Isn't this (或 that) great? 可是,如果代表下文要说的一句话,就只能用 this。
  - 11. (B) 两者(coffee, tea)之间任选其一,应用 either,三者以上才用 any。
  - 12. (B) the second 代表 the second chapter, 与上文的 the first chapter 对称。
- 13. (C) 上文有交待一共是两个女儿,除去唱歌的那个,剩下的"那一个"是演员。句意中已指明哪一个,所以要用定冠词。the other 后面省略掉 is。
- 14. (B) 80 元当中已有四个 20 (或四张 20 元钞票) 了, 所以说 "再来一个 20 (another 20) 就够了。" 意思是凑成 100。
- 15. (A) 空格位置是主语 Mary Kurt 的同位语,这个位置倾向于当专有名词看待。再加上这个乐团的女低音只有一人,符合专有名词的要求,因而不用冠词
  - 16. (A) ink 不可数, 故可排除 B。 再从 than that 来看, 应是比较级, 故排除 C 和 D。
- 17. (B) 空格后面的 boy 是单数, 所以排除复数的 A 和 C。英语的比较级要求较严格: 只能说比班上"别的"同学用功, 不然会造成"包括比自己用功"的语病, 所以要有 other 一词来限定范围。
- 18. (B) 多久一次, 像 every day, every week, every two months, every century (相当于 every hundred years) —样, 要用 every 这个限定词来表示。six hours 固然是复数,可是像 hours, miles, pounds 这种代表"单位"的字眼也可以当单数使用,例如: Three miles is a long way to walk. 所以 every six hours 并无冲突。
- 19. (C) hope 不可数, 所以从 A 和 C 来选。上下文要求用肯定语气:"还有希望"(从连接词 but 可以看出), 所以用表示肯定的 a little。如果用 A, 成为 little hope, 只能

表示否定语气: "希望渺茫"。

20. (B) 空格后面有完整的名词短语,已经有限定词 these,所以不能直接再加限定词 most 在前面 (most 在此并非表示"最"的副词, 而是表示"大部分"的限定词), 只能 用介词 of 隔开。而且 most 在此既非一般解释为"最"的最高级, 前面也就不应用定冠 词 the。

#### 不规则名词复数 2.8

以下是规律总结, 详表请见表 A.2 不规则名词复数。

以f或fe结尾 大多数以f或fe结尾的名词的复数形式时将其转为ves:

- calf calves
- hoof hooves
- life lives
- self selves
- thief thieves
- elf elves
- knife knives
- loaf loaves
- sheaf sheaves
- wife wives

- half halves
- leaf leaves
- scarf scarfs/scarves
- shelf shelves
- wolf wolves

元音 有些名称的复数形式是改变它们的元音声:

- fireman firemen
- foot feet

• man – men

- goose geese • mouse – mice

- louse lice • tooth – teeth
- woman women

#### 古英语 有些是沿用古英语:

- child children
- ox oxen

#### 以 o 结尾 见下文:

#### 有的加 "s"

- auto autos
- memo memos
- soprano sopranos
- pimento pimentos
- video videos
- kangaroo kangaroos kilo kilos
- photo photos • piano – pianos
- solo solos • pro – pros
- studio studios • tattoo – tattoos
- zoo zoos

#### 有的则加 "es"

- echo echoes
- potato potatoes
- embargo embargoes hero heroes
- tomato tomatoes
- torpedo torpedoes

• veto – vetoes

2.8 不规则名词复数 25

#### 有的两种都可以

- buffalo buffalos/buffaloes
- halo halos/haloes
- motto mottos/mottoes
- tornado tornados/tornadoes
- zero zeros/zeroes

- cargo cargos/cargoes
- mosquito mosquitos/mosquitoes
- no nos/noes
- volcano volcanos/volcanoes

#### 不变 拼写不变

#### 单复数同型:

- cod cod
- deer deer
- fish fish
- offspring offspring
   perch perch
- sheep sheep

• trout - trout

注: 很多鱼类的复数形式都是不变的, 但有例外

#### 本身就是复数,只有复数形式:

- barracks
- crossroads
- dice
- gallows

- headquarters
- means
- series
- species

### 借用 单词和其复数形式都借用自其他语言:

- alga algae
- larva larvae
- vertebra vertebrae

### 以 "us" 结尾的转为 "a" (适用于专业术语):

- corpus corpora
- genus genera

#### 以 "us" 结尾的转为 "i":

- alumnus alumni
- bacillus bacilli
- focus foci

- nucleus nuclei
- radius radii
- stimulus stimuli
- syllabus syllabuses terminus termini

#### 以 "um" 结尾的转为 "a":

- addendum addenda bacterium bacteria
- datum data

- erratum errata
- medium media
- ovum ova

stratum – strata

### 以 "is" 结尾的转为 "es":

analysis – analyses

basis – bases

- diagnosis diagnoses
- axis axes
- crisis crises
- emphasis emphases

- hypothesis hypotheses
- oasis oases
- synopsis synopses

- neurosis neuroses
- parenthesis parentheses
- thesis theses

#### 以 "on" 结尾的转为 "a":

- criterion criteria
- automaton automata
- phenomenon phenomena

### 意大利语,变 "o" 为 "i":

- libretto libretti
- tempo tempi
- virtuoso virtuosi

#### 希伯来语,末尾加"im":

- cherub cherubim
- seraph seraphim

#### 希腊语, 末尾加 ta:

• schema – schemata

## 2.9 限定词

### 2.9.1 前中后位限定词

名词短语中,限定词位置大体可以分为前位、中位、后位(见表 2.4)。

#### 限定词互斥的例外:

- 中位限定词 every 有时可在属格后面,例:
   His every action shows that he is a very determined young man.
- 前位限定词 such 用作代用式 (pro-form) 时, 也能接在数量词 any, no 和 many 以及基数词的后面:

no/any/several/many/forty-one such incidents ...

除作前位限定词外, all, both 和 half 作为代词还能带 of- 短语 (partitive of-phrase) 表示"部分"。**与名词连用时, of- 短语可有可无, 与代词连用则非用 of 短语不可**:

- all (of) the students
- both (of) his eyes
- half (of) the time/cost

- all of them/whom
- both of them/which
- half of it/this

2.9 限定词 27

表 2.4: 名词短语中限定词的位置

前位限定词 (互斥, 只选其一) 感叹 such, what 倍数词 double, twice, three times 分数词 one-third, one-fifth 数量词 all, both, half 中位限定词 (互斥, 只选其一) 冠词 a, an, the 物主代词 my, our, your, his, her, its, their 名词所有格 the rabbit's, the wolf's 关系代词 whose, which 指示代词 this, that, these, those wh-ever 限定词 whichever, whatever, whoever 疑问代词 what, whose, which 不定代词 enough, each, every, some, any, either, neither, lot(s)/piece/few/plenty of, no 后位限定词 基数词 one,two,three 数量词 few, little, many, much, several large/great/good number of (一般) 序数词 first, second, fourth, twentieth, next, last, past, (an)other

### 2.9.2 类指

以下用法可表示类指:

**a** + 可数名词单数 如 a tiger (不定指).

the + 可数名词单数 如 the tiger (定指)。

可数名词复数 如 tigers(不定指)。

零冠词 + 不可数名词 如 milk.

如果类指整个群体里的所有成员,就不能用 a/an 。

The tiger is in danger of becoming extinct.
 整个老虎种族,不能用 a tiger,只能用 the tiger is 或者 tigers are。

• Do you like **horses**?

直接用可数名词复数类指,是最常见的。

另外名词短语作非主语时,只有 the + 单数仍保持其类指功能。

Nova has been studying the medieval mystery play.

诺娃正在学习中世纪神秘剧。如将 the 替换成 a,则是某一种。如用复数则可能是部分。

## 2.10 属格

### 2.10.1 归属于: 属格和 of 结构

**属格(所有格 THE GENITIVE**) 后接名词或者形容词, used to show possession or close connection between two things. 展示两者之间的所属或紧密关系。

**OF-CONSTRUCTION** of 介词 + 名词性短语, belonging to sb/sth; relating to sb/sth 属于(某人/某物); 关于(某人/某物)。

What is the ship's name?What is the name of the ship?

• Some people's opinions the options of some people (不很清晰, 少用)

许多情况下,这两种形式意义相同且完全能够成立。

属格和 of 结构应根据如下侧重点, 结合实际情况加以选择:

- 1. **具有人性特点的名词类别常常用属格**。例如人、高等动物、集体(多个个人组成)、 地理位置(人类生活区域)、时间、人的感官活动等。
- the nations resources
- China's development
- today's paper
- the body's needs

- Europe's future
- the school's history
- a day's work
- the game's history
- 2. 属格有特指的意思,带有限定性; of 结构有泛指的意思。
- Susan's son (苏珊的儿子, 单看短语本身她也只有一个儿子)
- a son of Susan (苏珊有多儿子, 其中之一)
- 3. 根据末尾焦点 (end focus) 和末尾重心 (end-weight) 原则。更复杂和重要的单位应放在名词短语末尾。这样一来,属格倾向于将信息中心放在名词中心词上,of 结构倾向于将中心放在介词 of 的补足语上。

- The explosion damaged the ship's funnel. 焦点在 funnel
- The explosion damaged the funnel of the ship.
   焦点在 ship
   爆炸损坏了船上的烟囱。
- the ears of the man in the deckchair. 根据尾重,避免隔断产生歧义 帆布躺椅上那个男人的耳朵。
- the man's ears in the deckchair. [歧义,惊悚] 帆布躺椅上有那个男人的耳朵。
  - 4. 两者皆可的情况下, 属格往往比较简明清晰, 优先考虑。

### 2.10.2 独立属格 (THE INDEPENDENT GENITIVE)

如果上下文中已交代清楚属格后面的中心词,则中心词可以省略。省略的结果就构成了所谓"**独立属格**"。

- My car is faster than John's. [省略 car]
- Her memory is like an elephant's. [省略 memory]
- Mary's was the prettiest dress. [省略 dress]
- If you can't afford a <u>sleeping bag</u>, why not borrow <u>somebody else's</u>? [省略 sleeping bag]
  - The New York's **population** is greater than **Chicago's**.

需要注意, **of 结构如果出现在可比较语境** (comparable environments) 中, of 前面通常要加指示代词 **that/those**。上句如采用 of 结构,应是

• The **population** of New York is greater than **that of Chicago**.

### 2.10.3 后置属格(双重属格)

后置属格 将本应前置的人的属格后置,并在其前加 of,也称双重属格。 相比于正常属格,后置属格的限定性弱一些。

- some friends of Jim's
   等同于 some Jim's friends, 将 Jim's 后置并在前面加 of
- several students <u>of his</u> 等同于 several <u>his</u> students,将 his 后置并在前面加 of

后置属格可能是古英语传承自其他语言的遗留,与当前语法有些不同之处,很难简明扼要说清楚。

当中心语为人称, 即人称 + of + 后置修饰语时, 后置修饰语可以不用属格。

- The A friend of <u>Jim('s)</u> is coming to the party.
   注意,因中心语是被 of 短语后置修饰的,不能定指或专有,所以不能用 The。
- Mary of Mrs Brown [误,被 Mrs Brown 修饰的 Mary 是**限定定指**的,不是**补充 说明**的修饰。]
- Mrs Brown's Mary试分析下组例子中的不同含义:
- a painting of my sister's. [我姐妹画的,或者属于我姐妹的,一幅画]
- a painting of my sister. [画有我姐妹的一幅画]
- a painting by my sister. [我姐妹画的一幅画]
- a painting of my sister by my brother. [我兄弟画有我姐妹的一副画像] 后置属格在中国英语应试教育中时有出现……

### 2.10.4 带 of- 短语的同位关系

有些名词短语中含有一个介词短语成分。而起介词短语并非正规的后置修饰语,而是**前面名词的同位语**。这种结构由"限定词 + 名词 (N2) + of + **不定冠词** + 名词 (N1) 构成,

the city <u>of Rome</u>

等同于:

Rome *is* a city.

The city (that I mean) is Rome.

• the news <u>of the team's victory</u> the news *was* the team's victory

## 2.11 平行结构

如果两个名词一起放在同一平行结构里,即使是单数具数名词,也有**省略冠词**的倾向:

2.11 平行结构 31

• face to face

- day by day
- hand in hand
- eye to eye

- arm in arm
- mile upon mile back to back
- side by side

有时一个名词与另一个具有相反意义的名词相平衡,如;

- from father to son
- from (the) right to (the)left
- both mother and child
- husband and wife
- from (the) beginning to (the) end
- neither child nor adult

这些平衡结构中的名词基本上都不会有数的变化, 也不可能有限定词和修饰语, 实 际上是习语,是冠词"固定"用法的例子。

带有名词重复的短语通常具有副词功能。

# 第三章 代词和数词

代词更多情况下不是简单"代替"名词,而是"代替"名词性短语。

## 3.1 人称代词

表 3.1: 人称代词的主格、宾格、反身以及物主代词

	单数			复数		单复数		
主格	I	he	she	;+	we	they	1/011	who
宾格	me	him	her	it	us	them	you	who(m)
反身代词	myself	himself	herself	itself	ourselves	themselves	yourself	_
							yourselves	
属格(物	属格(物主代词)							
限定式	my	his	her	ita	our	their	your	Turb occo
独立式	mine	1115	hers	its	ours	theirs	yours	whose

a 限定式属格: 在名词短语中起限定作用, 修饰其后的中心语。

宾语位置如是人称代词,则使用人称代词宾格(这个大家一般都了解)。主语补语, 在正式文体中应使用主格,但是在非正式文体中使用宾格且越来越流行。

$$\frac{1.}{S} \frac{\text{Was}}{V} \frac{\text{he.}}{C_{\text{s}}}$$
 非正式文体中,不用 he,而用 him。

2.  $\frac{It}{s} \frac{'s}{v} \frac{I}{C_s}$  who's to blame.

$$\overline{S} \overline{V} \overline{C_S}$$

我负有 (不好的) 责任。非正式文体中,变 I为 me.

He is 
$$\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{more intelligent than} \\ \text{as intelligent as} \end{array}\right\}$$
 she (is).

用主格 she 的话,加 is 更符合并列连接的语义。非正式文体中,可以将之替代为 her.

b 独立式属格: 省略场景中已知要修饰的名词, 独立使用。

## 3.2 代用的 it

由于 it 是人称代词中最中性的而且在词义上是无标记的,它就用来作为"**虚主语**" 或"**代用主语**",尤其用在那些表示时间、距离或天气情况的词组中:

- What time is it?
- How far is it to York?
- It's warm today.
- It's getting dark.

也许完全虚指或无所指 it 的最好的例子是在下列习语中。it 在这些习语中接在动词后面, 笼统地泛指"生活"等:

- At last we've made it. [achieved success]
- have a hard time of it. [to find life difficult]
- How's it going?
- Go it alone.
- You're in for <u>it</u>. ["You're going to be in trouble."]
   it 也能用来代替谓体 (PREDICATION), 尤其是代替表示特征的补语。
- She was  $\begin{cases} a \text{ rich woman} \\ \text{rich} \end{cases}$  and she looked  $\underline{\mathbf{it}}$ .

上句 it 指代前面谓体 a rich woman 或者 rich。

## 3.3 反身代词

反身代词以 -self (单数) 和 -selves (复数) 结尾 (见表 3.1)。顾名思义,反身代词 "反映 "从句或句子中另一个名词性成分 (通常是主语),并与它形成互指关系:

- She allowed herself a rest.
- He is not himself today.

当一个非限定性从句 (NON-FINITE CLAUSE) 或一个名词化短语有一个以**最不确定的人 ("someone or other")** 作隐含主语时,可用反身代词 **oneself** (或用它在非正式文体中的等同词 **yourself**)。

Voting for <u>oneself</u> is unethical.
 给自己投票是不道德的。(非正式文体中可用 yourself)

先行词	反身代词	举例				
基本用	法					
主语	直接宾语	They helped themselves.				
主语	间接宾语	<u>She</u> allowed <u>herself</u> a rest.				
主语	主语补语	<u><b>He</b></u> is not <u><b>himself</b></u> today.				
主语	介词补足语	<u>Jim</u> pay for <u>himself</u> .				
强调用法						
主语	同位语短语	$\underline{\text{We}}$ couldn't come $\underline{\text{ourselves}}$ .				
主语	同位语短语	We ourselves couldn't come.				

表 3.2: 反身代词的功能

如涉及到自身,以下介词后面必须用反身代词:

- look at/after
- do with
- thinks of
- take upon
- a story about
- portraits/photograph of

## 3.4 前指、后指、实景所指和先行词

- **实景所指 (SITUATIONAL REFERENCE)** 指语言外的实际环境,如双方都心照不宣或被指向的人和物。
- 前指 (ANAPHORIC REFERENCE) 代词或其他指代词与上文中的名词性话语形成 互指关系。
- 后指 (CATAPHORIC REFERENCE) 代词或其他指代词与下文中的名词性话语形成 互指关系。
- 先行词 (ANTECEDENT REFERENCE) 与代词或其他指代词形成互指关系的那部分名词性话语。虽说名字是先行词,但实际也可居于稍后位置。
- 近指 既可以前指也可以后指的指示代词,如 this/these.
- 远指 只可以前指的指示代词,如 that/those.

36 第三章 代词和数词

- He told the story like **this**: "Once upon a time … " 因直接引述的话语在句子后面,只能使用近指的 this,而不能用 that.
- What do you think of THÀT! Bob smashes up my car, and then expects me to play for the repairs.

在极为有限的语境中,例如表示愤慨等强烈**负面情绪**时,that 可用于后指。

## 3.5 不定代词

不定代词缺少人称代词、反身代词、物主代词、指示代词、(某种程度上) wh-代词 所具有的特指成分。

不定代词在逻辑意义上是量词,与其相同或类似形式的限定词密切对应(见表3.3)。

	数	功能	可数	不可数	
	<b>3X</b>	グル	人称的	非人称的	1、可数
		   代词	everyone, everybody everything		(it( )) all
	单数	1 (141)	each		(it()) all
通用		限定词	every, each	ı	all
	复数	代词	(they()) all/	both	
	及奴	限定词	all/both		
	单数	代词	someone, somebody something		
断定	半奴	限定词	a(n)		some
	复数 代词和限定词		some		
	单数	代词	anyone, anybody anything		
非断定	平奴	限定词	either, any		any
	复数	代词和限定词	any		
		代词	no one, nobody	nothing	
	单数	1人时	none		none
否定		代词和限定词	neither		
	复数	代词	none		
	单数或复数	限定词	no		

表 3.3: 主要的不定代词和限定词

后置修饰语 else 可加在复合代词的后面. 它的词义在下面例子的括号中作了解释:

- everyone else [every other person]
- nobody else [no other person]
- anything else [any other thing]

3.6 数词 37

如用属格, 's 要加在 else 的后面, 而不直接加在代词后面:

- I must be drinking **someone else's** coffee.
- His hair is longer than <u>anybody else's</u>.

除 not 之外,以下否定范围也要用非肯定形式的否定词 any 等:

具有否定形式的词 never, no, neither; nor

具有否定意义的词 1. 副词和限定词 barely, little, few, only, seldom 等

- 2. "隐含的否定词" just, before; fail, prevent; reluctant, hard, difficult 等; 以及带 too 的比较用法。如:
- Jean will <u>always</u> manage to do <u>something</u> useful.
   [manage to do: 设法做某事]
- Jean will **never** manage to do **anything** useful.
- There was a good chance somebody would come.
- There was <u>little</u> chance <u>anybody</u> would come.
- John was **eager** to read **some** of the books.
- John was <u>reluctant/too lazy</u> to read <u>any</u> (of the) books.

最终选用 some 组合词还是 any 组合词,取决于整个句子的内在含义或基本含义。

- Did <u>somebody</u> telephone last nigh?
   暗示说话人期待有来电, anybody 则不暗示这种期待。
- Would you like <u>some</u> tea?
   礼貌用语,期待对方接受。
- Will <u>somebody</u> please open the door?
- But what if somebody decides to break the rules?
   要是…会怎样

either 与 both, neither 与 no/none 的差别

## 3.6 数词

美国计算法中, billion 是 one thousand million (1,000,000,000), 10 亿;此外还有 trillion (万亿), quadrillion (1000 万亿)。老式英国计算方法与此不同。**数词后面只能用 one,不能用 a**。

38 第三章 代词和数词

表 3.4: 基数词和序数词

	基数词		
1	one	1st	first
2	two	2nd	second
3	three	3rd	third
4	four	4th	fourth
5	five	5th	fifth
6	six	6th	sixth
7	seven	7th	seventh
8	eight	8th	eigh <b>t</b> h
9	nine	9th	nin <b>t</b> h
10	ten	10th	tenth
11	eleven	11th	eleventh
12	twelve	12th	twelfth
13	thirteen	13th	thirteenth
14	fourteen	14th	fourteenth
15	fifteen	15th	fifteenth
16	sixteen	16th	sixteenth
17	seventeen	17th	seventeenth
18	eighteen	18th	eighteenth
19	nineteen	19th	nineteenth
20	twenty	20th	twentieth
21	twenty-one	21st	twenty-first
22	twenty-two	22nd	twenty-second
23	twenty-three	23rd	twenty-third
24	twenty-four	24th	twenty-fourth
25	twenty-five	25th	twenty-fifth
26	twenty-six	26th	twenty-sixth
27	twenty-seven	27th	twenty-seventh
•-		<b>-</b> 0.4	
28	twenty-eight		twenty-eighth
29	twenty-nine	29th	twenty-ninth
30	thisty	20th	thirtieth
	thirty		fortieth
40 50	forty		fiftieth
50 60	fifty		sixtieth
	sixty		
70	seventy		seventieth
80	eighty		eightieth pinetieth
90	ninety		ninetieth
100	a/one hundred		(one) hundred and first
101	•		(one) hundred and first
	a/one hundred and two	102nd	` ,
1 000	a/one <b>thousand</b>	1 000th	(one) thousandth

1001 - /--- 1 ---- 1 /-- 1 ---- 1001-1 /--- 1 /-- 1 /--- 1 /-- 1

3.6 数词

• 1100: <u>a/one</u> thousand <u>one</u> hundred thousand 后面不能用 a

与名词和动词中的 -y 改为 -ie(s) 不同,以 -y 结尾的基数词变为以 -ie(th) 结尾的序数词时,要增加一个懒音 /ə/。试比较:

sixty the sixties /'sɪkstiz/ the sixtieth /'sɪkstiəθ/

### 3.6.1 时间

我们总是以"百"为单位来读年份:

- in 1985: nineteen hundred and eighty-five
- in 1600s: sixteen hundreds (17世纪)

其他例子:

- in the 17th century "seventeenth century
- in the 1980s 读作 (但很少写成): "nineteen-eighties" 在 20 世纪 80 年代

月、日通常的表示形式是:

- 7(th) February 或 February 7(th)
   读作 the seventh of February, February (the) seventh 或 February seven。
   在日期的缩写中, 数词通常由斜线或句点分隔开:
- 7/2/82 或 7.2.82

英国英语日期顺序日月年 The 7(th) February 1982 美国英语日期顺序月日年 July 2(nd), 1982。

表示时刻缩写形式的数词中用冒号(尤其在美国英语中),或英文句号(英国英语),如:

6:30 或 6.30读作 six-thirty 或 half past six。

### 3.6.2 分数

普通分数的书写和朗读形式如下:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  a/one half
- $\frac{1}{3}$  a/one third
- $\frac{1}{4}$  a/one quarter

- $\frac{2}{3}$  two-thirds
- $\frac{7}{8}$  seven-eighths
- $3\frac{3}{4}$  three and three-quarters

•  $\frac{1}{5}$  a/one fifth

- $\frac{8}{76}$  eight seventy-sixths
- 8/6 eight over seventy-six 海学符号不与不学习词选

连字符号不与不定冠词连用,如 one-third 用连字符号,但 a third 就不用。

- He won the race by <u>a/one hundredth</u> of a second.  $\frac{1}{100}$
- He won the race by <u>a/one two-hundredth</u> of a second.  $\frac{1}{100}$
- He got three hundredths of the money  $\frac{1}{300}$

在小数中,整数部分按通常基数词的读法读出 seventy-one 等,小数点以后的数作为单个的数字读出 five three 等:

- 71.53 seventy-one **point** five three
- 0.426 zero <u>point</u> four two six

大部分欧洲国家、南非习惯用逗号(读作 comma)而不用句点来书写小数点:

• 1,2% one comma two per cent

### 3.6.3 数学符号

- $\bullet$  = equals
- - minus
- + divided by
- $(17 \sqrt{9} + \frac{65}{5}) (4X3) = 15$
- + plus
- x times or multiplied by
- \square) root of

读成 seventeen minus the square root of nine, plus sixty-five over five, minus four times three, equals fifteen. (数学符号使数字之间的关系很明确.)

 3.6 数词
 41

**ALL (12) ENGLISH TENSES** 

	P.	AST	PRES	SENT	FUTURE	
	Usage Example		Usage	Example	Usage	Example
CHARLE	Describe an action already completed.	I went to Egypt in 1988.	Express habits or general truth	I'm nineteen years old.	Express an action or	I will eat Japanese Food tomorrow.
SIMPLE	Can be used with or without adverbs of time.	He drank his whiskey almost bottoms up.	Describe a future event as part of a plan or arrangement	The plane arrives at 18.00 tomorrow.	circumstance which hasn't taken place yet.	
	Express uncompleted action of the past	Everyone was shouting.	Describe action going on at the time of speaking	They are swimming in the pool.	Express what will be going on at some time in the future.	Vou'll be missing the sunshine once you're back in England.
CONTINUOUS	Describe persistent habits of the past	They were always quarrelling.	Express temporary action which may not be happening at the time of speaking	John's driving his father's car while his own car is in the workshop.	Express planned events.	This time next week I will be sun-bathing in Bali.
PERFECT	Describe a completed action of the past that	After he had finished work, he went straight home.	Express past action which is not defined by a time of occurrence.	Teresa isn't at home. I think she has gone shopping.	Express an action that will be complete before another	By the time I finish this course, I will have take ten tests.
PERIECI	happened before another event took place.		Express an action which started in the past and has continued up until now.	She has worked in the bank for five years.	event takes place.	
PERFECT CONTINUOUS	Describe an action in the past that began before a certain point in the past and continued up until that time.	She had been working at that company for three years when it went out of business.	Express an action which started at some point in the past and may not be complete.	He has been living in Bangkok since he left school.	Describe an action that will have happened for some time and will not be complete yet at a certain point in the future.	I will have been watching TV for 3 hours when you arrive.



图 3.1: 英语全时态 12 种 (1)

42 第三章 代词和数词

#### **GRAPHICAL OVERVIEW OF ENGLISH TENSES**

#### PRESENT PERFECT PRESENT SIMPLE I write I have written past present future Pa Fu PRESENT CONTINUOUS PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS I am writing I have been writing Pa PAST SIMPLE PAST PERFECT SIMPLE I wrote I had written **Р**а Pr Fu Pa Fu PAST CONTINUOUS PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS I was writing I had been writing Рa Ėи Pa Pr Fu FUTURE SIMPLE - WILL FUTURE PERFECT SIMPLE I will write I will have written **P**a Pr Fu **Р**а Pr Fu FUTURE CONTINUOUS FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS I will be writing I will have been writing **Р**а Pr Pa Pr Fu

图 3.2: 英语全时态 12 种 (2)

# 第四章 动词

## 4.1 时 (tense) 体 (aspect)

时 (tense) 指示事件或状态发生时间的语法机制。

教学当中一般认为有过去时、现在时和将来时,见(图 3.1 图 3.2)。但现代英语语法一般认为,英语只有两种语法编码的时态,**现在时**和**过去时**。至于为什么不包括将来时,可参考下一节。

体 (aspect) 指示动作与时间相关联表达方式的语法机制,它关注动作的性质或状态,而不是时间。英语主要有四种体:一般体、进行体、完成体、完成进行体。

## 4.2 不存在的将来时

现代英语语法较多认为,英语没有将来时,因为它没有像许多其他语言那样的将来时变化,也没有任何其他可以单独称为将来时的语法形式或形式组合。英语提供了各种将来时的替代方式,以下例子均可表未来,且确定性大体上是依次递增。

will/shall/must/may 等情态助动词 不确定性较强。

- Who do you think <u>will win</u> on Saturday?
- If you'll just wait here for a moment, I'll see if Mr Andrews is free. 如果你要在这里等一会儿,我看看安德鲁斯先生是否有空。(委婉拒绝)
- What time **shall** we **come and see** you?
- We'<u>11 fly</u> at 30,000 feet.
   有机长临时决定的意思。
- We'll be flying at 30,000 feet.
  will be doing, 加入了进行时,有"当然,必然"的意思,绝对会这样发展。

be to 等半助动词 确定性和情态助动词基本可一一相应, 可见 5.2.4 节.

- There daughter is to be married soon.
- I'm about to read your book.

be going to + 不定式 用于某种意图的实现或者某种起因的后果。

- I am going to complain if things don't improve.
- It's going to rain.
- She's going to have a baby.

is/are doing 现在进行时 根据决定或程序将发生的事。

- The match is starting at 2:30.
- I'm leaving the university in two year's time.
- 一般现在时 用于 if, before, when 引导的从句中,把将来要发生的动作当作确定的基点。
  - What will you say **if I marry** the boss?
  - A: Are you going to the beach tomorrow?
    B: Yes, if the weather <u>is</u> good.

也可用于校历、时刻表,或基本恒定不变等确定性最强的事件。

- School <u>finishes</u> on 21st March.
- The plain <u>takes off</u> at 20:30. [take off 为短语动词,起飞]

此外,在虚拟语气、假设从句中还可以用过去式表将来……

## 4.3 动词功能分类

根据动词在动词短语中的功能,可分为三类:

- 全义动词 **FULL VERBS** 又叫实义动词 lexical verbs,如 play, grow, jump 等,只能用作主要动词。
- 基本动词 PRIMARY VERBS be, have, do, 既可以作主要动词(注:系动词也是主要动词),也可作助动词。

情态助动词 MODAL AUXILIARY VERB may, might, will, would, can, could, shall, should, must, 只可作为助动词, 并且必须是**谓语部分第一个动词**, 它们能 表达所谓情态 (MODALITY, 包括意愿、可能性、义务等) 这一领域中的含义。

动词的分词 participle 这个名称,也反映了这一形式既带有动词特征,又带有形容 词特征。

有些语法认知将动名词和现在分词分为两类,虽然他们屈折形式一致。另一些则认 为动名词只是现在分词一种表现形式。我们这里认可第二种,如此可说现在分词可作为 动词、形容词或名词使用。

#### 动词的第三人称单数及名词复数 -s 4.4

- 1. 以清、浊咝声结尾的原形的-s 形式, 结尾应是 es, 读作 /ɪz/, 如以 /s z tʃ ʤ/ 等音。
- 2. 以清辅音结尾的原形后读作 /s/, 如 /p t k f/ 等音。
- 3. 除咝声外,以浊音(包括元音)结尾的原形后,读作 /z/。
- 4. 以 o 结尾的一些单词要加 es, 如 go ⇒goes, echo ⇒echoes
- 5. 以辅音 + -y 结尾的原形,把 -y 变成 -i,后加 es : try ⇒tries,carry ⇒carries。

#### 规则动词的过去式和过去分词 4.4.1

规则动词的过去式和过去分词:

- 1. 在以 t 和 d 结尾的原形后面读作 /id/。 padded, patted
- 2. 在以浊音(包括元音)结尾的原形后面读作 /d/。buzzed, towed, called
- 3. 除 t 外,在以清音结尾的原形后面读作 /t/。passed, packed
- 4. 以辅音 + -y 结尾的原形, 把 -y 变成 -i, 后加 ed:
- try ⇒tried carry ⇒carried
- 5. 如果动词原形以单个辅音字母结尾, 之前只有一个发元音的字母并且重读, 那么它 的现在分词和过去分词形式中要加双拼。
- bar ⇒barring ⇒barred
- beg ⇒begging ⇒begged
- permit ⇒permitting ⇒permitted
   patrol ⇒patrolling ⇒patrolled
- - 6. 以元音 +c 结尾的动词原形,其现在分词和过去分词形式要加 k。如
- panic ⇒panicking ⇒panicked
   traffic ⇒trafficking ⇒trafficked
  - 7. 如果原形以不发音的 -e 结尾, 他的过去和现在分词形式, 总是先删去 -e。

46 第四章 动词

• create ⇒creating ⇒created

type ⇒typing ⇒typed

### 4.4.2 不规则动词屈折变化

请见表 A.1 不规则动词。

## 4.5 (半)情态助动词

表 4.1: 情态助动词到主要动词的递差度表

动词类别	助动词或主要动词短语
主要情态助动词	may, might, will, would, can, could, shall, should, must
临界情态助动词	dare, need, ought to, used to
情态助动词习语	had better, would rather/sooner, be to, have got to 等
半助动词	have to, be about to, be able to, be allow to, be bound to, be going to, be likely to, be obliged to, be supposed to, be willing to 等
系动词	appear to, happened to, seem to, get + -ed 分词, keep + -ing 分词等
主要动词 + 非限定性从句	begin + -ing 分词等

主要情态动词只可作助动词;而其他兼具情态助动词功能的动词还可作为主要动词使用。因此要注意区分,如:

- <u>Need</u> we <u>escape</u>? We <u>needn't escape</u>. [need 作为情态助动词]
- She <u>needs</u> to <u>practice</u>A and so <u>do</u> I. [need 对应后面的 do, 作为主要动词]
- Such things <u>ought not to</u> be allowed.

  [ought to 的否定式,也可缩写为 oughtn't to。不过一般用 shouldn't.]
- <u>Ought</u> I <u>to</u> write to say thank you? [过于正式, 注意 ought to 在这里只有 Ought 前置]

Ought 前置疑问不常见,通常在其前方加 Do you think,如:

**Do you think** I **ought to** write to say thank you?

有情态助动词功能的动词短语示例:

- No one <u>dare tell</u> the king this bad news.
- We <u>ought to</u> give him another chance. <u>Ought</u> we have done it?

4.6 动词短语 47

- You'd better lock the door.
- I'<u>d rather/sooner</u> live in the country than in the city.
- No one is likely to be able to recognize her.
- Has he to answer the letter this week?

## 4.6 动词短语

动词短语 句法中的谓语 V (也被称作动词短语),由 1 个主要动词和 0-4 个助动词组成 (见表 4.2 )。

助动词	主要动词	备注
	sank	一般过去时
was	sinking	过去进行时
has been	sunk	现在完成时,被动
must have been	sinking	现在完成进行时
must have been being	sunk	现在完成进行时,被动

表 4.2: 动词短语

过去传统语法将简单句化为**主部**(SUBJECT)(和现代语法主语相同)和**谓部**(PRED-ICATE)(主语之后的部分)。而谓部又可分为**助动词和功能词及谓体**(PREDICA-TION)(主要动词及之后部分)。如:

The sun<br/>主部was<br/>助动词和功能词sinking in the west.课体was sinking in the west 为谓部。

## 4.7 简化英语时态

不必死记十几种英语时态(变成 x \* y 的笛卡尔积),只需要分别确定时 aspect 和体 tense,在将之加以组合即可(见  $4.1 \$ 节)。

### 4.7.1 过去时间

1. The U.S. <u>established</u> diplomatic relations with the P.R.C. <u>in 1979</u>. 美国与中华人民共和国于 1979 年建交。

- 2. The movable print <u>was introduced</u> to England in <u>1485</u>. 活版印刷于 1485 年被引进英国。
- 3. I was visiting clients the whole day yesterday.

昨天一整天我一直在拜访客户。

yesterday 表明整个事件发生在**过去**,而 the whole day 突出**一直持续进行**,现在分词可表阶段时间内的持续性,因此用过去进行时。

两种一般过去时之间通常存在的是时间先后顺序关系;过去进行时和一般过去时之间则常是时间内包关系 (TIME-INCLUSION):

- When we <u>arrived</u>, Jan <u>made</u> some fresh coffee.
   时间顺序, 到达后煮咖啡。
- When we <u>arrived</u>, Jan <u>was making</u> some fresh coffee. 时间内包,到达时正在煮咖啡,到达的一瞬内包在煮咖啡期间。
- I was watching TV when I heard the doorbell.

听到门钤响的时候, 我正在看电视。

这个句子的时间状语"我听到门铃响的时候",是指门铃响起来那一刹那,所以是很短的**一瞬间**,英语中瞬息动词一般**用一般体**,结合句子这里用**一般过去式** heared。而门铃响前和响时我**一直在看、持续在看**电视,所以主句用**过去进行时**。

- The witness <u>was being questioned</u> in court <u>when he had a heart attack</u>. 证人心脏病突发时,他正在法庭上被质询。[同上]
- While you were reading the paper, I was working. while 后一般接进行时、耗时长的动作;前后都用进行时表示同时发生。

### 4.7.2 现在时间

真理以及不变事实要用一般现在时表示。其实这也没什么好背的。因为,只有在以 now 为中心的时间段可以大到涵盖过去与未来,才可以用来表示不变的真理。请看下面 这些例子:

• Huang <u>pitches</u> a fast ball. Li <u>swings</u>. It <u>looks</u> like a hit. The shortstop <u>fails</u> to stop it. It'<u>s</u> a double!

黄投出快速球, 李挥棒, 好像是安打, 游击手没有拦到球, 是二垒安打!

播报运动比赛时,常会用到一连串的一般现在时。每个动作在当前一瞬间从发生到湮灭,播报员所播报的一直是当前这一刻所发生的事情,所以用一般现在时。

其实,一系列瞬息动作使用一般现在时,也为事件赋予了画面动感。

4.7 简化英语时态 49

• Bush is the U.S. President.

布什是美国总统。

布什是现任美国总统,可是几年前他不是,几年后他也可能不再是。这个句子的时间是一个以 now 为中心的括弧,所以用一般现在时。

• All mothers love their children.

天下的妈妈都爱自己的小孩。

天下的妈妈没有不爱小孩的。这是古今皆然,以后也不会改变,所以动词用一般现在时的 love。

• 7-ELEVEN **is selling** big cokes at a discount **this month**.

统一超市这个月大杯可乐打折。

this month 是现在时;可乐打折,是正在持续中的活动,所以用 selling big cokes。以现在分词短语做补语来强调持续性。

• According to the NASA survey, the ozone layer **is being depleted**.

根据美国国家航空和航天局的研究,臭氧层正在被消耗中。

当前事件 + 持续 + 被动, 用现在进行时, 且加以被动态。

### 4.7.3 未来时间

• There <u>will be</u> a major election in <u>March</u>.

三月将有一次大选。

时间副词 in March 是一个未来时间。未来的事情还没发生,尚未确定,所以要加一个助动词 will 在前面,意思是"到时候会"。

• Don't call me at six tomorrow. I'll still be sleeping then.

不要在明天六点时打电话给我。我那时还在睡觉。

明天六点,将来;现在分词的词尾 -*ing* 表示持续性, still be sleeping 一直在睡觉,强调自己不想被打扰的理由充足。

• The building will be razed next month.

这房子下个月拆除。

时间副词 next month 是一个未来时间的括弧,所以动词用未来一般体: will be。 后面的 razed(被拆除)是过去分词,当形容词补语看待,形容主语"房子"。 50 第四章 动词

### 4.7.4 完成体

从功能上来看,一般体是交代动作发生的具体时间点(段);而完成体并不对动作发生的时间点(段)作明确交代,其只表示在一个更为宽泛的时间段内"曾经"、"做过"的意思;且隐含或明显强调截止日期。

• I'm sure I have seen this face somewhere.

我肯定曾经见过这张脸。

主要从句 I'm sure 的动词 am 表示是现在时间,除此之外,没有时间副词交代"看到"这张脸的具体时间,只知道一定有见过。这就是现在时间完成式的条件,所以用 have seen (看过)。

• We have been working overtime for a week to fill your order.

我们连续加班一个星期赶出你订的货。

时间副词 for a week 是"**到现在为止**已经有……了",强调了**截止时间**并且截止时间是**现在**,要用**现在完成时**"已经"来配合。

除此之外,该句强调在一个大的时间段内一直在进行的工作,所以要用进行时。

• The house has been redecorated twice since they moved in.

打从他们搬来算起,这栋房子已经被装修过两次了。

since they moved in (打从他们搬来算起), 截止时间是当前, 所以主句用完成体。 且装修要用被动态。

如果没有特别交代的话,一般说"有……过"就是"到现在有……过",所以都是现在完成式。用过去完成时时则要有一个过去的截止时间,在那之前就"有……过"。

Many soldiers <u>had died</u> from pneumonia <u>before the discovery of penicillin</u>.
 发现盘尼西林以前,已经有很多士兵死于肺炎。

盘尼西林在 1928 年发现,before the discovery of penicillin,表明这是一个 以 1928 年为截止时间的时间段内,所以要用过去时间的完成式 had died。

• I <u>had been smoking</u> three packs of cigarettes a day <u>before I decided to quit</u>. 我决定戒烟之前,每天要抽三包烟。

before I decided 是"在我决定之前"的一大段时间,以 decided 为**截止时间**。这就得用过去完成时 had been。smoking three packs 中的 **-ing 表示持续性,也就是每天都要抽三包烟,而且是"一直如此"**,用来形容主语"我"。

• Japan <u>had not been defeated</u> yet <u>by the time Germany surrendered</u> unconditionally.

到德国无条件投降为止, 日本尚未被打败。

4.8 TEST 51

未来时间的完成式,只是把截止时间后移到未来的一个点。观念上与现在、过去时间的完成式完全一样。在写法上,因为是未来时间,所以动词前面加一个 will 就可以了。请看例句:

#### • Next April, I will have worked here for 20 years.

到四月,我在这里就工作20年了。

next April 结合 for 20 years, 表明截止到四月、为期二十年的时间段, 所以要用完成式。动词前面加上 will,表示到现在还没有,要到四月才"会"做满 20 年,也就是未来时间的完成式。

#### • Come back at 5:00. Your car will have been fixed by then.

五点再来吧! 到时候你的车一定已经修好了。

你去修车厂拿车子,老板叫你五点再来。他的意思不是五点才要修你的车,而是说五点以前就一定先修好了,等你来拿。真正修好的时间可能是四点,也可能是三点也说不一定,反正不超过五点。这就是完成式的时间段且**截止时间在未来**,所以用未来完成时,车辆用被动态表示被修理厂工人修好,所以用 will have been fixed。

# • <u>In two more minutes</u>, she <u>will have been talking</u> on the phone <u>for three</u> hours!

再过两分钟,她就一直打了足足三小时的电话了!

in + 数词 + 时间,表示从现在算起,多长时间内。该句截止时间为在**将来**的 2 分钟后。用将来完成时。be talking 表示持续在做某事,所以该句用将来完成进行时。

### **4.8** Test

### 4.8.1 练习一

请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

- 1. So far we \_\_ nothing from him.
  - (A) have been heard

(B) did not hear

(C) have heard

- (D) have not heard
- 2. At present a new road \_\_ in that part of the city.
  - (A) is building

(B) will be built

(C) will have built

- (D) is being built
- 3. Our city \_\_ a great deal. It doesn't resemble the one of three years ago.

(A) changes	(B) has changed	
(C) is changing	(D) will change	
4. When Anna phoned me I had just fi	nished my work and to	take a bath.
(A) was starting	(B) have started	
(C) starting	(D) will start	
5. There some very bad storms reco	ently.	
(A) is   (B) are		(D) have
<ul><li>6. The future price of this stock by</li><li>(A) is going to determine</li><li>(B) will determine</li><li>(C) will be determining</li><li>(D) will be determined</li></ul>	several factors.	
7. The camera was invented in the 19t	h century. At that time, n	nost photog-
raphers professionals.		
(A) are	(B) were	
(C) have been	(D) had been	
8. The whole area was flooded becaus	e it for weeks.	
(A) rains	(B) has rained	
(0) 1 11	(D)	
(C) had been raining	(D) was raining	
<ul><li>(C) had been raining</li><li>9. By next Sunday you with us for</li></ul>		
9. By next Sunday you with us for	three months.	
9. By next Sunday you with us for (A) will have stayed	three months.  (B) will stay  (D) have stayed	
9. By next Sunday you with us for (A) will have stayed (C) shall stay	three months.  (B) will stay  (D) have stayed	
<ul> <li>9. By next Sunday you with us for (A) will have stayed</li> <li>(C) shall stay</li> <li>10. We could smell that someone a</li> </ul>	three months.  (B) will stay  (D) have stayed  cigar.	ed
<ul> <li>9. By next Sunday you with us for (A) will have stayed</li> <li>(C) shall stay</li> <li>10. We could smell that someone a</li> <li>(A) would be smoking</li> </ul>	three months.  (B) will stay  (D) have stayed  cigar.  (B) was smoked	ed
9. By next Sunday you with us for (A) will have stayed (C) shall stay  10. We could smell that someone a (A) would be smoking (C) had been smoking	three months.  (B) will stay  (D) have stayed  cigar.  (B) was smoked  (D) would be smok	ed
9. By next Sunday you with us for (A) will have stayed (C) shall stay  10. We could smell that someone a (A) would be smoking (C) had been smoking  4.8.2 练习二	three months.  (B) will stay  (D) have stayed  cigar.  (B) was smoked  (D) would be smok	
9. By next Sunday you with us for (A) will have stayed (C) shall stay  10. We could smell that someone a (A) would be smoking (C) had been smoking  4.8.2 练习二 请把括弧中的动词以适当的时态填入空格	three months.  (B) will stay  (D) have stayed  cigar.  (B) was smoked  (D) would be smok	
9. By next Sunday you with us for (A) will have stayed (C) shall stay  10. We could smell that someone a (A) would be smoking (C) had been smoking  4.8.2 练习二  请把括弧中的动词以适当的时态填入空格 item Boy: Do you want to go and see	three months.  (B) will stay (D) have stayed  cigar.  (B) was smoked (D) would be smok  S内,以使对话内容完整。 Gone with the Wind with the	

4.9 ANSWER 53

Boy: To tell you the truth, I have seen it too. In fact, I \_\_ (3. see)it before you did.

Girl: That's impossible. I told you I saw it the first day it was on.

Boy: But it's the truth! I  $\_$  (4. see) it seven or eight years ago, the last time that old picture  $\_$  (5. come) in town.

Girl: In that case, why did you ask me to go in the first place? Boy: Well, I just \_\_ (6. want) to go out with you tonight. Since you have seen the picture, will you go to the baseball game with me instead?

Girl: I \_\_ (7. guess) I will, if Father says Okay. But you will have to pick me up at my place.

Boy: Great! I \_\_ (8. see) you at 5:30 then. I'll bring my car.

Girl: But why 5:30? Why not seven o'clock?

Boy: Because the game \_\_ (9. start) by then. These evening games \_\_ (10. begin) at 6:30, you know. Don't forget now, 5:30 at your place!

### 4.9 Answer

### 4.9.1 练习一答案

- 1. (C) so far(到目前为止)应用现在完成时,故排除过去式的 B。主语是 we,表示"我们听到"时应用主动态,故排除被动的 A。因空格后已有否定的 nothing,所以不选表示重复否定的 D。
- 2. (D) at present 表 "现在",应用现在时,故排除将来时的 B 和 C。主语 road 与 动词 build 配合,应用被动态表示"被建造",故排除主动的 A。答案 D 表示"现在正在被建造中"。
- 3. (B) "现在它和三年前已大不相同",可以看出,空格那个 change 要表示的是从三年前到现在的改变,因此选择现在完成时 B。A 和 C 其实也没错,表示它"经常在变",不过这两个答案与题目第二句的呼应不及 B 密切。D 的将来时则和题目第二句有较大的冲突。
- 4. (A) 从 when Anna phoned me 以及 I had just finished 可看出时间在过去, 因此表示现在时间的 B 和未来时间的 D 都可排除。又,空格前面有对等连接词 and,要求对称。在 A 和 C 之中只有 A 是动词短语,可以和前面的动词短语 had just finished 对称。

- 5. (C) recently 表示"不久前到现在",应用现在完成时。表示"有"的观念应用 There is/are 的句型,其现在完成时即是 have been (主语 storms 是复数)。
- 6. (D) 从 future price (未来价格) 可看出时间在将来。主语 price 与动词 determine 配合应用被动态,这点从空格后面的 by several factors 亦可看出。唯一正确的被动态是 D。
- 7. (B) 从 at that time 可看出时间在过去(19 世纪)。因明确表示出那一段时间,句子前后时间一致,且前面一句用的是 was,所以后句应该也应用一般过去时,故选 B。
- 8. (C) 从主要从句 was flooded 可看出,淹水是过去时间,而造成淹水的原因"下雨",只能在淹水之前发生,表示一大段时间内的持续,所以该用过去完成进行时。
- 9. (A) next Sunday 表示未来时间,故排除现在时间的 D。然后介词 by 表示"到……为止",应用完成式,因而排除一般体的 B 和 C。
- 10. (C) 主语 someone 和动词 smoke (有人抽雪茄) 配合应用主动态,故可排除被动的 B 和 D。而 A 的 would be smoking 表示"将抽未抽",如此则和 we could smell (已闻得到) 有冲突,故选过去完成时的 C,表示在那之前已有人在抽,才会留下味道。

### 4.9.2 练习二答案

- 1. have seen 看过,而不说何时看的,应用现在完成时。
- 2. went 既说出看的时间(last Monday),应用一般体。
- 3. had seen 时间是 before you did, 只知在过去时间 you did 之前, 未明言在何时, 应用过去完成时。如果用 saw 也不算错, 因为在 I saw 和 you did 之间有 before 相连, 清楚交待两个动作的先后, 不必倚赖过去完成时来交待。
- 4. saw 因交待了"七八年前",应用一般体。用 had seen 也不算错,这样的语气是"我看得比你早",至于"七八年前看的"这点则在语气上不予强调。
  - 5. came 因有 the last time 标出时间,应用一般体。
  - 6. wanted 因为是回应 Why did you ...?
  - 7. guess 这是这位小姐说话时的猜想,时间就是 now,应用现在式。
  - 8. will see 因为说出 at 5:30 的未来时间。
- 9. will have started 因为时间是 by then,也就是"到了那个时候",老早开打了。没说几点开打,总之在那之前,这就是完成式。也可用 would have started,用 would 不是表示过去时间,而是表示非事实的假设,成为:"如果真的拖到七点才去的话,那就

4.9 ANSWER 55

看不成了,非早点去不可!"这样的口吻。

10. begin 因为 **these** evening games 不只说今晚这场, 而是"所有的晚场比赛都是", 也就是说包括今天的这一阵子都是如此,就得用一般现在时。

# 第五章 不定式

# 5.1 带 to 与不带 to 的不定式

带 to 的不定式中的 to 不是介词,只是一个**不定式标记词** (INFINITIVE MARKER)。 不带 to 的不定式中第一个动词用动词原形,因此很多人不知道不带 to 的不定式,只 知道动词原形。

虽然可认为不带 to 不定式是动词原形的一种应用。但我觉得,最好还是将动词原形与不带 to 的不定式区做下区分为好,因为**不带 to 不定式之前可以有助动词或类似动词**,而前面的(类似)助动词或者隐含的内容有"体"aspect 的变化;以及"不定式"可以表示词性多变。

动词原形 动词的基本形式,可以通俗认为只用在**祈使句。既没有时态的标记,也没有体**的变化。

- Come here.
- Let us party.
- 不带 **to** 的不定式 用在否定助动词,情态助动词(can, may, could 等),**感官动词**(see, hear, feel 等),**使役动词**(let, make, have 等)后面,采用动词原形形式。 let 是个小品词,有一点词性模糊。
- 带 to 的不定式 to + 动词原形。可以将其中的 to 理解为情态助动词功能,并常表示有不确定性。

不同于原形,两种不定式都**没有时 tense 的标记,但有体 aspect 的变化**。如 should/to <u>write</u>, should/to <u>be</u> writing, should/to <u>have</u> written, should/to <u>have</u> been writing, didn't <u>do</u>.

### 5.2 to 与助动词的共同点

要了解不定式与助动词之间的关系,不妨先看一个例子:

58 第五章 不定式

### • I am glad to know you.

很高兴能认识你。

这句话可以进一步改写为下面这个类似的句子:

### • I am glad because/that I am able to know you.

由连接词 because 所引导的状语从句中,主语 I 和前面主要从句的主语相同,是重复的元素。动词 am 是个空的 be 动词,没有意义。因此这两个元素(I am)都可以省略。可是,状语从句中省略主语与动词之后,已经不成一个完整的从句结构了。如此一来,连接词 because 也就没有必要存在。剩下的不定式 to know 本身就带有 able to 的暗示,所以就变成:

### • I am glad to know you.

翻译成"很高兴能认识你",是因为这个 to know 就是 able to know,也就是 can know 的变化。

从这个例子可以看出,不定式与助动词的关系极为密切,我们可以利用这层关系来练习判断不定式的用法。首先,我们来观察一下不定式与助动词之间有什么共同点。

### 5.2.1 后面都要用动词原形

• I <u>will go</u>. 我要走了。

• I want to go.

我想去。

### 5.2.2 都有"不确定"的语气

- He <u>is</u> right.他是对的。
- He <u>may be</u> right.
   他可能是对的。
- He seems **to be** right.

他好像是对的。

第一句 He is right 是确定的语气,把"他是对的"当作事实来叙述。一旦加上助动词 may 之后,就成了不确定的语气。所以第二句 He may be right 只是一个推测,不是事实叙述。第三句 He seems to be right 也是推测,不是事实叙述。这种**不确定语气**是 to 与助动词之间一个很重要的共同点,可以用来判断何时该用带 to 不定式。

### 5.2.3 都要用完成式来表达相对的过去时间

助动词与不定式中的 to 本身都无法完整表达过去时间。如果你听到"哗啦哗啦"的声音从外面传来,可以说:

#### • It **must be** raining now.

一定下雨了。

如果看到天上乌云密布,一副山雨欲来的样子,也可以说:

#### • It may rain any minute.

随时都可能下雨。

### • It might even snow.

说不定还会下雪。

这几个例子中,第一句的助动词 must 没有过去式的拼法。至于第二句、第三句的 may 和 might,咋看之下好像有现在式和过去式的区别。可是用在猜测语气中并不是 如此。It may rain any minute 是未来时态,It might even snow 同样也是未来时态,这时的 might 并不是 may 的过去式,只表示比较保留、比较没有把握的猜测语气。所以,不论像 must 这类只有一种拼法的助动词还是像 may,might 这类有两种拼法的助动词,都只能用来猜测现在或未来时间的事情,**助动词本身缺乏表达过去时间的能力**。

如果你早上起来看到地上湿湿的, 于是说:

### • It must have rained last night.

昨晚一定下过雨。

在猜测过去的事情时,助动词不论是 must、may 还是 might,都只能表示语气强弱的差别,无法表达过去。助动词后面要接动词原形,也不能用过去式,所以别无选择,只好用完成式来表示过去,也就是 must have rained 这种形态。就这点来看,不定词仍然与助动词相同。

### • It seems to have rained last night.

昨晚好像下过雨。

这个句子的动词 seems 是现在式,表示"现在看起来"、"现在的推测"。可是推测的事情是昨天晚上的事,是过去的时间,所以"下雨"应该是过去式,但是 **to 与助动词一样,本身缺乏表达"时 tense"中过去的能力**,后面都要接动词原形,也不能用过去式,所以只能用**完成式**来表示过去,变成 to have rained。这又是不定式和助动词的一个共同点。

第五章 不定式

情态助动词	不定式
must	have to
should	ought to
will/would	be going to
can/could	be able to
may/might	be likely/allowed to
be (just) going to	be about to

表 5.1: 情态助动词可改写为不定式(半助动 词)

### 5.2.4 所有重要的情态助动词,都可以改写为不定式

请观察以下的对照:

从以上来看,不定式中的 to 与助动词其实是同一种东西的相互变化。

凡是不定式出现的地方,都可以看成是另外一个从句的省略:把主语省略,助动词改为相应不定式。

## 5.3 不定式与动名词的区分

传统语法所称的**动状词**(Verbals),包括现在分词(Ving)、过去分词(Ven)、动名词(Ving)与不定式(to V)等等。其中**现在分词、过去分词有时还可以是形容词类**,不定式则是"不一定什么词类":它可以当**名词、形容词、副词**使用。这就产生了一些混淆点。比如说,动词后面的宾语位置,必须用名词类。可是动名词和不定式都可以当做名词使用(分词只能当形容词,可以不必考虑),到底应如何区分?这就要借助我们刚才的观察了。现在来看看几个具有代表性的动词:

这个句子的 to marry next month 是 plan 的**宾语**,必须用名词类。那么为什么用不定词 to marry,而不用动名词 marrying 呢? 因为 to marry next month 就是 (that) they will marry next month 的变化。marry 是计划中的事情,下个月才要发生,是**将来时**。再把 they will marry 改成 they are to marry。这时候,如果把重复的主语 they 和空的 be 动词 are 省略掉,就成了不定式 to marry。

我避免犯同样的错误。

这里用 making 比用 to make 恰当,因为 to make 是 will make 的省略,既然是"避免",后面又用 will make(将要做),意思就变得不清楚了:

• 
$$\frac{I}{S}$$
 avoid something.

• I will make the same mistake twice.

四种动状词中,只有动名词和不定词可以做名词类使用,也就是说:只有这两个可以当 avoid 的宾语。如果用不定词 to make,则带有 I will make 这种将来时或者不确定的涵意,与 avoid 这种具有否定意思的动词并不适合并列,所以只剩下动名词 making 是唯一的选择了。

dislike • 
$$\frac{I}{S}$$
  $\frac{\text{dislike}}{V}$   $\frac{\text{standing in long lines.}}{O}$  我讨厌排队。

动词 dislike (不喜欢) 本身是否定的, 后面就不适合接 I will stand in long lines (愿意排队)。而且 dislike 不像 hate, 它没有"不得不"(have to)的暗示。所以 dislike 的后面接 to stand 就不适合了。既然不能用不定式,就只剩下动名词可以用了,所以要说 I dislike standing ...。

后面通常接动名词的还有 avoid, consider, delay, deny, enjoy, escape, finish, give, up, imagine, involve, mention, mind, miss, postpone, practice, resist, risk, suggest 等。

更新后面只接动名词或不定式的动词。

# 5.4 接不定式和 -ing 从句皆可的动词

有些动词后面可接不定式,也可接 -ing 分句,但其语义上往往有差别。了解这方面内容可对不定式或 -ing 从句加深理解。

remember doing 记得过去发生过的事,可有持续性。

• I still <u>remember buying</u> my first bicycle. [remember that I had bought] **remember to do** 记得**将来应该做**的事,有**不确定性**(可能最终也未做此事)。

• You must <u>remember to fetch</u> Mr Lewis from the station tomorrow. [remember that you are to]

forget doing 忘了过去发生过的事,可有持续性。

• I'll never forget meeting the Queen in 1988.

forget to do 忘做应该做的事,有不确定性(未发生)。

• I **forgot to buy** the soap.

go on doing 持续做过去已经在做的某事,可有持续性。

• She went on talking about her illness until midnight.

go on to do (停止其他动作,)继续做某事,动作非持续,有转折。

She stopped talking about that and went on to do her job.

regret dong 后悔、遗憾做过某事,有持续性。

• I <u>regret leaving</u> school at 16 — a big mistake. [ I regret <u>that I left</u> school at 16]

regret to do 为不得已发生的事情感到抱歉、遗憾,并非真正后悔。

- We <u>regret to say</u> that we are unable to help you. [regret <u>that we should say</u> that]
- **see, watch, hear** 等 可以接 doing (**正在发生,还未结束,持续性**);也可接不带 to 的不定式 (**事情已完成**)。
  - I looked out of the window and saw Emily **crossing** the road.
  - I saw Emily **cross** the road and **disappear** into the bank.

try 接 doing 或不定式均可,尝试做困难的事。但 try doing 有期待某一种结果的意思。

- I tried sending her flowers, but she still wouldn't speak to me.
- John isn't here. **Try phoning** his mobile.
- **like, love, hate, prefer** 接 doing 或不定式均可。不定式可以有**尚未发生**,或 **不得不** 的意思。
  - I <u>hate to tell</u> you this, but we're going to miss the train.

• "Can I give you a lift?" "No thanks, I'd <u>prefer to</u> walk." give you a lift: 载你一程

begin, start 接 doing 或不定式均可。

**stop, continue** 停止/继续 **正在做**的事情,用 doing; **停下其他事情做某事**,用不定式。

- We <u>stopped taking</u> pictures.
   We were no longer taking pictures.
- We <u>stopped to</u> take pictures.
   We stopped what we were doing so that we could start taking pictures.
- Lisa continued to work after she had her baby.
- She wanted to **continue working** until she was 60.

advice, allow, permit, forbid 不接宾语时,用 doing (SVO, -ing 从句做宾语);接宾语时,一般接不定式 (SVOO, to-不定式从句做直接宾语)。

- I wouldn't advise taking the car –there's nowhere to park.
- I wouldn't advise you to take the car ···
- We don't **allow/permit smoking** in the lecture room.
- We don't **allow/permit people to smoke** in the lecture room.

另外,go/get/walk/point/visit/down/be used 等位置**副词后接的 to 为介词**,不是不定式标记 to,如后接动词,需用 -ing。

### 5.5 使役动词与不带 to 的不定式

了解不定式是什么,就能了解**使役动词的后面为什么要接不带 to 的不定式**。我们先来比较一下使役动词和一般动词有什么差别。

The little girl S
 小女孩邀请妈妈来开母姊会。

her mother O

 to come to the PTA meeting.
 C

这个句子可以改写为:

• The little girl asked if her mother would come to the PTA meeting.

ask 是普通动词,邀请人参加,但别人愿不愿意是不确定的,所以会牵涉到语气助动词 would come, 这就会变成不定式 to come。

使役动词与普通动词的差别就在于它有**强制性**,它的结果是确定的、无从选择的。因为这种确定性的语气,**排除了助动词、to存在的空间**,因而也就不能用带 to 的不定式。

The teacher S V O C
 老师叫小女孩留下来。

如果老师客客气气地问: Will you stay behind? 就会成为下面这句叙述:

• The teacher s sked V the little girl to stay behind.

这个小女孩有选择的自由,她愿不愿意留下来这点还不确定,所以会有助动词,也就会变成不定式。可是如果老师是命令她留下来,没有选择的余地,那么老师说的就是: Stay behind! 请注意: **祈使句的动词原形**,表示的就是强迫的语气。它要求结果是确定的,已经没有助动词或 to 存在的空间,这时候就不会变成不定式,而是动词原形。像 let、have、make 等**使役动词**,后面是接**不带 to 的不定式**,就是因为这种强迫性的命令语气,使它的结果不具有不确定性,因而不能用 to。

当然**这并不表示使役动词的后面只能用不带 to 的不定式**,例如:

John S Painted over.
 约翰把车子让人重新漆过了。

had + 宾语 + 过去分词表示被动态。

## 5.6 感官动词与不带 to 的不定式

感官动词的后面接不带 to 的不定式的道理,与使役动词是相同的:因为 to 的不确定性不适合这个上下文。

I heard V O Playing the violin.
 我听见她在拉小提琴。

所谓**感官动词**,就是 see、hear、watch 等等。它们后面**不适合用 to**,是因为 to 是助动词的变化,有不确定的语气。如果说 to play the violin,那就表示 she would play the violin(她想要或将要去拉小提琴),那么你听得到吗?所以感官动词这种"听到、看到"的字眼,只能**配合确实发生的事使用**,而不能和带有"不确定、未发生"涵意的不定式连用。

5.7 TEST 65

那么,感官动词可否与**现在分词**一起使用呢?当然,如果她正在拉琴被我听到,那么用现在分词 playing 来表示**持续性**是最好的。可是:

• I heard her cry out in pain.

我听到她痛得大叫一声。

如果像这个例子,只是大叫一声,叫声并不持续,那么用现在分词 crying 并不好,因为这样会变成:

• She was crying in pain.

她很痛苦,一直哭。

这个意思就不一样了, 所以不能用现在分词。既不能用不确定的 to, 也不是被动语态, 不能用过去分词, 就只好用不带 to 的不定式了。

### **5.7** Test

### 请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

1. Not wishing to attend the dance, Marie	that she had a fever.
(A) made believed	(B) make believe
(C) makes believe	(D) made believe
2. He is said by his friends	
(A) to be gentle and gracious	
(B) to have graciousness and gentle	
(C) gentle and a gracious man	
(D) that is a gentle and gracious man	
3 any aspect of animal behavior, the b	iologist must first determine the
laws influencing animal behavior.	
(A) Explain	(B) To explain
(C) One explains	(D) The explanation of
4. "I'll help you whenever you need me." "	Good. I'd like me tomorrow."
(A) you helping	(B) that will help
(C) you to help	(D) that you help
5. "Where did he go?" "He went to another	r store"
(A) to buy slacks	(B) for buy slacks
(C) buy slacks	(D) buying slacks

6the silkworm makes a	a liquid in its body and	then squeezes it out through
special holes.		
(A) It makes silk	(B)	Making silk
(C) To make silk,	(D)	Silk is made by
7. I am a peaceful person.	Don't make me vi	olence.
(A) use	(B)	using
(C) to use	(D)	used by
8. Americans bacon ar	nd eggs for breakfast e	very day.
(A) used to having	(B)	are used to have
(C) are used to havin	g (D)	used to
9. The bus driver told the	man his naughty s	son to hang out the window.
(A) to don't allow	(B)	not to allow
(C) not allowing	(D)	don't allowing
10. To get an education,	.•	
(A) one must work h	ard (B)	working hard is necessary
(C) there is need to w	vork hard (D)	hard work is needed
11. The purpose of the inve	stigation is the sus	pect's degree of involvement
in the crime.		
(A) to ascertaining	(B)	ascertaining
(C) to ascertain	(D)	ascertained
12. The witness went on the	e witness stand by	the prosecution.
(A) being questioned	(B)	to question
(C) to be questioned	(D)	questioning
13. You can playback the ar	nswering machine. Sh	e
(A) will call	(B)	could call
(C) could have called	(D)	is calling
14. You should avoid va	igue words in your co	mposition.
(A) to use	(B)	using
(C) the use	(D)	to using
15. He is waiting at the re	estaurant for a free ta	ble because he forgot a
reservation in advance.		
(A) making	(B)	to make

5.8 ANSWER 67

(C) made	(D) have to make
16. We can go out now. It stopped quite	a while ago.
(A) rain	(B) raining
(C) to rain	(D) rained
17 able to write an academic paper, you	must do a lot of library research.
(A) Be	(B) Being
(C) To be	(D) Before
18. He always has his shoes at the railw	ay station.
(A) shone	(B) to shine
(C) shining	(D) shined
19. Don't sit up too late, for night is a time	<u> </u>
(A) resting	(B) to rest
(C) that rests	(D) when rest
20. He was made the Bible every night h	pefore going to bed.
(A) read	(B) to read
(C) reading	(D) reads

### 5.8 Answer

- 1. (D) 从 she had a fever 可看出时间在过去,因而排除现在时间的 B 和 C。made 是"使役动词",所以后面用不带 to 的不定式 believe。若 make believe 二字连用时即表示"假装",已成为常用的短语。
- 2. (A) 动词 is said (据说) 暗示"并不确定", 所以要配合不定式使用, 可先删去非不定式的 C 和 D。在 A 和 B 中有对等连接词 and, 其左右要对称。B 中的 graciousness 是名词, 和 gentle 这个形容词不对称, 故选 A(gentle 和 gracious 都是形容词)。
- 3. (B) 主语 the biologist 和动词 must first determine 配合构成一个独立从句,它的前面若加上一个动词(如 A),一个没有连接词的从句(如 C),或是一个名词短语(如 D),都会造成句型的错误,**只有 B 的不定式是修饰语的性质**,可以附在独立从句上而不影响它的句型。
- 4. (C) 根据上下文,回答句应是"希望你明天能来帮忙"的意思。因为牵涉到"会来"、"能来"的语气,应有表示不确定的助动词(如 B)或不定式(如 C),其他可排除。 又, B 的构造(that will help)是名词性关系从句,不能放在 like 后面作宾语,所以选

- C, 以 you 为宾语, to help 为宾语补语。
- 5. (A) 以"他到另一家店去买裤子"来回答"他到哪儿去了?"。这时"去买裤子"是说明动机或目的,最恰当的选择是用 in order to 或直接 to 来表示,故选 A 优于 Ving 形态的 D。B 中以动词 buy 置于介词之后, C 中直接在独立从句后加上动词,是明显的语法错误。
- 6. (C) 空格后的部分是个独立从句,前面加上从句而无连接词(如 A),或加上介词(如 D),都不合语法。B和 C分别用分词和不定式,在词类上都符合句型的要求。然而这些修饰语置于句首时要有逗点隔开,只有 C符合这项要求。
  - 7. (A) 动词 make 是"使役动词", 后面直接用不带 to 的不定式(只有 A) 作补语。
- 8. (C) are used 表示"习惯了",后面的 to 是介词,意为"对"某事习惯了。既是介词,就要有名词作宾语,故选 C。如果用 used to 表示"从前常常",后面得用动词原形,而 A 和 D 都没有。
- 9. (B) told the man 在此是"叫别人去做……"之意,含有要求的味道,也就是 The driver said to the man that he should…之意,因此后面应用不定式,故从 A 和 B 来选。而不定式不是限定动词,不能加助动词 don't 来作否定句,只能用 not,故选 B。
- 10. (A) to get an education 是 **so that**(或 **in order that**) one can get an education 的意思,所以后面的主要从句应用 one 作主语。
- 11. (C) 主语 the purpose 是"目的", 而 be 动词后面的空格是主语补语位置, 也就表示目的, 所以要用不定式 to(代表 in order to)ascertain(想确定一下)。
- 12. (C) 下文的 by the prosecution (被检方),表示要用被动态,也就是 A 和 C。而 being questioned 意为"正在被质询",和前面的 went on the witness stand (走上证人台)有冲突,应用不定式,表示"走上台后才要"被质询。
- 13. (C) playback 是"播放",带子上有声音才能播,所以下文应是"她可能来过电话了",表示对过去的猜测,要用助动词加完成式。
- 14. (B) avoid 有**强烈**否定意味,与暗示 be going to 的不定式冲突,故用动名词。如果用 C 的 the use,它就是 avoid 的宾语,所以要再加上个介词才能连上下文,例如 avoid the use of vague words。
- 15. (B) 从上下文看得出来他事先该订位却忘了, 所以要用不定式 forgot to make, 意 既 He forgot that he should make...
- 16. (B) raining 有持续的暗示, stopped raining 表示先前一直在下雨,后来停了。
- 17. (C) 从下文的 you must... 这个条件来看, 前面表示的应是一个"目的", 也就是

5.8 ANSWER 69

in order to, 所以用不定式。

18. (D) 后面一半可还原为 His shoes are shined...

他的鞋在……给人擦。把主语 shoes 改成宾语,补语 shined 改成宾语补语,即是答案。

原句结构是 <u>He</u> always <u>has</u> <u>his shoes</u> <u>shined</u>. 他总让他的鞋子闪亮。

- 19. (B) to rest 是 when you should rest 的变化。C 用名词性关系从句表示是"夜晚本身在休息", D 的 when rest 则缺了主语。
- 20. (B) make 虽是使役动词,要用**不带 to 的不定式**作补语,可是在**被动态中就得把 to 放回去,成为不定式**。

# 第六章 动名词

传统语法中有四种动状词(Verbals),动名词是其中的一种。另外三种是现在分词(Ving)、过去分词(Ven),以及上一章讨论过的不定式(to V)。在这四种动状词之中,动名词与现在分词拼法相同,都是 Ving,需要注意区分。不过,动名词属于名词类,现在分词则是当形容词使用,两者词类不同,还不至于混淆。倒是动名词与不定式这两者,都可以当名词使用(现在分词与过去分词只能当形容词),所以在使用上要特别注意,否则很容易出错。

我和以上旋元佑的认识不同,动名词属于现在分词——只是表示现在分词的名词格。

## 6.1 动名词的特性

### 6.1.1 动名词与普通名词的比较

许多运动都用动名词表示,像是 swimming、skiing、skating、mountain-climbing、dancing、jogging 等。这些动名词也一样,保留了一些动作的味道,同时也有持续性的暗示。例如游泳,跳下水总要划几下才叫做游泳(swimming)。登山更是长时间持续的攀登(climbing)。这种**持续性**与动作性,就是动名词常有的特色。

不止运动,还有:

- Let me buy you <u>a drink</u>.
   我请你喝一杯。
- **<u>Drinking</u>** is his only vice.

喝酒是他唯一的坏习惯。

第一句中的 a drink 是普通名词: "一杯酒"。第二句则用动名词 drinking,代表"喝酒"的动作与习惯。如果只喝一杯,那就是 have a drink。如果是**习惯性、经常性**的喝,才用动名词 drinking。此外:

• I am not afraid of <u>death</u>, but I am scared of <u>dying</u>. 死亡我倒不怕,只是怕死的过程。 普通名词 death 代表"死亡"的抽象概念。相信灵魂不朽的人,像苏格拉底,大概都不会畏惧死亡本身。可是只要是人,就会有求生、避免痛苦的本能,在面临死亡的过程时仍然难免会恐惧。所以,若要区分"抽象概念"与"动作过程",只要一个用普通名词,一个用暗示"动作、持续"的动名词就可以了。

There are <u>two weddings</u> at the restaurant tonight.
 这家餐厅今晚有两场婚礼。

大部分的动名词是**不可数名词**,可是也有一些是**可数**的,像例句中的 two weddings。动名词的前面有限定词 two,后面加 s 表示复数。这种用法跟普通名词没有两样,不定式却不能这样使用,这是动名词与不定式的差别之一。**动名词的结构很像普通名词,可以有冠词(例如:the burning);有所有格(例如:his running);有复数(例如:two weddings)**。而带 to 不定式以短语形态出现(例如:to run,to leave),不能加限定词或复数。

### 6.1.2 动名词短语与名词从句的比较

• <u>I</u> really <u>enjoyed</u> <u>teaching English to school children at night</u>.

那时我晚上教儿童英语教得很愉快。

在传统语法中,句中宾语的部分被视为一个动名词短语。如果深入分析,将会发现这个短语中有动词(teach)、宾语(English)、介词短语(to school children)、时间副词(at night),只差没有主语。可是,teach 的主语很明显:与主要从句中的 I 是同一个人。所以,这个动名词短语可以还原成一个名词从句:

# $\bullet \ \ \frac{I}{S} \ \ \frac{enjoyed}{V} \ \ \frac{(that) \ I \ taught \ English \ to \ school \ children \ at \ night.}{O}$

这个宾语从句是如何变成动名词短语的? 我们可以从简化(reduction)的角度来了解这个问题。从句中的主语 I 和主要从句的主语 I 相同,所以可以省略,如果再把动词去掉,就可以成功地拆除这个从句,不需要连接词(that)了。从句的动词 taught 是全义动词,不能直接丢掉,但是可以改变成动状词(Verbal)来做词类变化。但是该选择哪一种动状词呢?四种动状词中,只有不定式(to V)与动名词(Ving)可以当做名词使用,来取代词从句。所以:

• that I taught English to school children at night

这个宾语从句,只能够变成为 to teach English ... 或者是 teaching English ...。在这两种选择之中,该用哪一个?我们在上一章提过,不定式是由助动词变化而来,带有不确定的语气。但在上面这个例句中,想表达的并不是这种语气,而是接近动名词的持续性语气:晚上教英语,是一种持续进行的活动。我们可以先这样处理:

• that I was teaching English to school children at night

然后省略掉重复的主语 I 与无意义的 be 动词 was。没有了主语、动词,就不需要连接词 that,于是整个句子成为:

I really enjoyed s
 B
 B
 B
 B
 B
 C
 B
 D
 D

所以, **动名词短语可以视为名词从句的变化**。只要把主语和 be 动词放回去, 就会出现完整的名词从句。

## 6.2 动名词的一些变化

### 6.2.1 复合字

- 1. Picking strawberries can be V C 采草莓很好玩。
- 2. The picking of strawberries requires patience. S V O S 采草莓要有耐心。
- 3. Strawberry-picking s v a strenuous job. 
  采草莓是很费力的工作。

第一句中,picking strawberries 可以看出有动词 pick 和宾语 strawberries。主语被省略了,看不出来是谁,只是笼统的 anybody。所以,这句可以还原为:

• That anybody picks strawberries  $\frac{\text{can be}}{\text{V}}$   $\frac{\text{fun.}}{\text{C}}$ 

主语部分本来是名词从句,现在简化为动名词短语 picking strawberries, 其中 strawberries 是 pick 的宾语。

第二个例句中,picking 前面加上了定冠词 the,这样是把 the picking 当做一个名词短语来使用。所以picking 后面不能再有宾语,而要改成介词短语 of strawberries 做为修饰语,形容 the picking。

在第三句中,主语 strawberry-picking 是个复合名词。把 strawberries 拿到动名词 picking 的前面,也就是把它放在**形容词位置**使用,这也是为什么要改成**单数**的原因:英语形容词是没有复数的。中间再加上 hyphen,就串连成复合名词 strawberry-picking。这个构造和 mountain-climbing 是相同的。

### 6.2.2 主词不能省略时的处理方式

### • I don't like that John calls my girlfriend day after day.

约翰每天打电话给我女朋友,让我很不舒服。

这个例句中,主要从句的主语是 I,宾语从句的主语是 John,主语并不相同。宾语从句的动词 calls 没有助动词,而且是日复一日持续的,所以不能改成不定式,而要用动名词 calling。可是,如果写成:

### • I don't like calling my girlfriend day after day.

$$\frac{1}{100}$$
  $\frac{1}{100}$   $\frac{1}{100}$   $\frac{1}{100}$ 

就变成是自己不爱打电话给女朋友了。问题就出在两个从句的主语不相同。所以在 宾语 calling 之前,要设法表示打电话的是 John,不是 I。怎样才能把名词 John 变成 形容词类来形容动名词的 calling? 前面说过,**动名词结构接近普通名词,可以有冠词、 所有格等等**。所以,如果 John 变成**所有格**,就可以附在 calling 的前面了:

### • I don't like John's calling my girlfriend day after day.

$$\frac{1}{2}$$
  $\frac{1}{2}$   $\frac{1}{2}$   $\frac{1}{2}$   $\frac{1}{2}$   $\frac{1}{2}$ 

动名词的主语与主要从句的主语不同时,处理方式就是用所有格的形式保留下来。

### 6.2.3 动名词的被动态: being Ven

• That I was invited here is a great honor.

$$\overline{S}$$
  $\overline{V}$   $\overline{C}$ 

受邀来到此地, 是莫大的荣誉。

这个句子中,当做主语的名词从句有简化的空间。因为是被动态,省略主语 I 之后,意思也不会表达不清楚。如果再把无意义的 be 动词省略,固然完成了简化的动作,可是剩下的部分:

# • $\frac{\text{invited here}}{S}$ (?)

是**过去分词短语,只能当形容词使用,不能做主语**。所以这时候应该做词类变化(比如 改成 the invitation),或者就要动用到 being 了。

许多人不太清楚 being 怎么用。其实,being 这个词中,be 是没有意义的 be 动词,所有的意义在于词尾的 -*ing* 部分。而词尾 -*ing* 可能是现在分词,表示**进行的暗示,或者是动名词,有词类变化的功能**。如上述例句中,invited here 不能当主语,因为原文是被动式 be invited。这时除了把 invite 本身改成名词的 invitation 之外,还有一个办法,就是借用前面的 was 来做词类变化,变成 being invited here,一方面保留了过去分词 invited 的**被动态**,另一方面则符合了**名词**的词类要求,于是这句变成:

# • Being invited here $\frac{is}{v}$ a great honor.

这就是动名词被动态的处理方式。

## 6.3 动名词与现在分词的分辨

这两种动状词写起来一样,有时又出现在同样的位置,不习惯的话不太容易有所区分。还好因为写来完全相同,所以你不会分辨也没关系!不过,为求充分理解,我们还是来仔细分析一下。

That flying bird is a black-faced spoonbill.

S

那只在飞的鸟是黑面琵鹭。

这个 flying 出现在名词短语 that bird 中间的形容词位置,是现在分词。**现在分词有形容词功效,强烈暗示"进行"的动作**。为了要验证它的确是现在分词,可以把它移到形容词的另一个位置:补语位置来看看。

• That bird 
$$\frac{\text{is}}{\text{S}}$$
  $\frac{\text{flying}}{\text{C}}$ 

当然, 传统语法是这样分析句型的:

# • That bird $\frac{\text{is flying}}{S}$ .

为求时态简单化起见,现在分词可视为形容词补语,而以 be 动词为动词。不论怎样分析,都可以看出 flying 是现在分词。

• That flying jacket looks smart on you.

那件飞行装你穿起来很帅。

这里的 flying 也是放在名词短语中的形容词位置,可是它不是现在分词,而是动名词,只是借放在这个位置做复合名词。何以得知? 我们把 flying 拿到补语位置验证一下:

• That jacket is flying. (?)

就可看出来 flying 不能当作现在分词解释,只能当动名词。如果要检验动名词的话,可以把它拿到一个典型的动名词位置:介词后面。

That's a jacket for flying.

这样就可以看出来, flying 是动名词。因为 a flying jacket 的意思和 a jacket for flying 相同。

### 6.4 结语

这一章我们看完了动名词的用法,处理完第二种动状词。关于不定式与动名词之间的区分,应该更有心得了。区分的重点在于:

不定式是助动词的变化,带有不确定语气。

动名词的结构接近普通名词,可是往往带有"动作、持续"的意味。

### 6.5 Test

### 6.5.1 练习一

请练习以下句子,试试看该用 (A) 不定式 to V,还是 (B) 动名词 Ving。如果两者都可以,答案就是 (C)。

- 1. The barber practiced \_\_ (shave) on a watermelon.
- 2. I love \_\_ (watch) horror movies alone.
- 3. \_\_ (Listen) to music can be very relaxing.
- 4. You must not forget \_\_ (pay) the phone bill.
- 5. The workers finished \_\_ (paint) and left.
- 6. Seeing is \_\_ (believe).
- 7. To see is \_\_ (believe).
- 8. Thank you for \_\_ (call).
- 9. John's \_\_ (leave) the party so early was rather impolite.
- 10. I really enjoyed \_\_ (be) at your party.

### 6.5.2 练习二

请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

1. I just took \_\_ and don't feel like swimming now.

6.5 TEST 77

	(A)	swimming	(B)	to swim
	(C)	a swim	(D)	swim
2.		nta hypocrite, especially when I calling		elling the truth. called
	(C)	being calling	(D)	being called
3.		tside my window every night is get The cats screaming	_	on my nerves. The cats to scream
	(C)	Screaming cats	(D)	The cats' screaming
4.		ing a language is all about the c to learn		re. learning
	(C)	learn	(D)	learned
5.		very exacting sport. Mountain-climbing	(B)	Climb mountains
	(C)	To climb mountains	(D)	Mountains-climbing
6.	In doi	ng magic, the trick lies in your a	audi	ence.
	(A)	divert	(B)	diversion
	(C)	to divert	(D)	diverting
7.		vorkers objected to like slaves. be treated	(B)	treating
	(C)	treat	(D)	being treated
8.	Every	one marveled at the French Ope	en.	
	(A)	Michael Chang's winning	(B)	Michael Chang's win
	(C)	Michael Chang to win	(D)	Michael Chang win
9.		don't mind so, I think you are i		•
	(A)	saying	(B)	to say
	(C)	I say	(D)	my saying
10.		used tolectures—he's a teacher.		16.
		give		gift
	(C)	given	(D)	giving

### 6.6 Answer

### 6.6.1 练习一答案

- 1. shave (刮脸) 是持续的动作,而且动词 practice 暗示要持续做一段时间,故用 shaving。
- 2. 若用 watching,表示"看电影"这件持续进行的事情。若用 to watch,则带有一丝想要"去看"的味道。
- 3. "听音乐"和 dancing、mountain-climbing 等要持续的活动一样, 多用动名词表示。
- 4. 动词 must not forget 暗示电话费"尚未付,应该去付",故用表示不确定的 to pay。
- 5. 动词 finish 表示油漆的工作已经结束, 不适合用不确定意味的不定式, 故用 painting。
  - 6. 补语使用 believing 和主语 seeing 对称。
  - 7. 用 to believe 也是为了和 to see 对称。
  - 8. 在介词后面不能用不定式,只能用 calling。
  - 9. 在所有格后面也不能用不定式,只能用 leaving。
- 10. 动词 enjoy 表示"乐在其中", 如果用不定式 to be, 意味著"不确定", 也就是"还乐不起来", 所以只能用 being, 表示"已经在进行中", 因而有乐趣出来。

### 6.6.2 练习二答案

- 1. (C) take a swim 是"游一趟", swimming 则是"游泳运动"。
- 2. (D) 下文"特别是我明明说了实话",因而前面应该是被动的,"我讨厌被叫作伪君子"。只有 D 是被动态。
- 3. (D) 本句的动词 is 是单数,而 A、B、C 都以 cats 为主语,是复数,只有 D 用 screaming 作主语,是单数。
- 4. (B) 空格在 be 动词后面,是**主语补语的位置,要求和主语对称**,而主语是动名词, 因此也选动名词。
- 5. (A) 登山这种运动得持续一段时间,应用动名词,故由 A 和 D 来选。这种复合名词,前面的 mountain 置于形容词位置,不能有复数,故选 A。

6.6 ANSWER 79

6. (D) 介词后面应用名词, 故由 B 和 D 来选。而空格后面又有名词 your audience, 故只能选 diverting, 让 your audience 作它的宾语。

- 7. (D) object to 的这个 to 解释为"**对**"某事表示反对,所以是**介词**,后应接名词,故由 B 或 D 来选。再从意思上看应是**被动**,"被当奴隶看待",故选 D。
- 8. (A) 让人啧啧称奇的应是"事", C和 D则是指人, 故可排除。而"张德培赢得法国公开赛"中的 win 是**动词**(因为后面有 the French Open 作宾语),所以在**所有格** Chang's 之后要改成动名词 winning,词类才正确。
- 9. (D) 意思上应是"不介意我这样说的话",所以要从 C 和 D 来选。再从词类上看,应用名词类的 my saying so 做 mind 的**宾语**,故选 D。
  - 10. (D) be used to 是"对"某事习惯了, to 是介词, 故选 D 作宾语。

# 第七章 分词

传统语法所谓的动状词(Verbals)包含前两章处理过的不定式、动名词。另外是两种分词(附牛津字典解释):

- 过去分词 (PAST PARTICIPLE) the form of a verb that in English ends in -ed, -en, etc. and is used with the verb have to form perfect tenses such as I have eaten, with the verb be to form passive sentences such as It was destroyed, or sometimes as an adjective as in an upset stomach.
- 现在分词 (PRESENT PARTICIPLE) the form of the verb that in English ends in -ing and is used with the verb to be to form progressive tenses such as I was running or sometimes as an adjective as in running water.

由上,我们可知过去分词和现在分词在一些时候可以作为形容词来修饰名词。

## 7.1 分词与形容词的比较

形容词是用来形容名词的,可以放在

- 1. 名词短语中
- 2. 补语位置

这两个位置都可以放分词来取代形容词、同样达到修饰名词的目的。

### 7.1.1 现在分词与形容词的关系

- That black dog doesn't bite.
  - 那只黑狗不咬人。
- A barking dog doesn't bite.

爱叫的狗不咬人。

在这两个名词短语中,现在分词 barking 与普通形容词 black 一样放在名词短语中间,用来修饰名词 dog,都为形容词。只不过 barking 这个现在分词要加上进行的暗示,解释为"正在叫的,一直叫的",这个**进行的暗示**("正在"、"一直")就可以视为现在分词 -*ing* 字尾的弦外之音。许多形容词字尾都有它的弦外之音,像是-*ful*("很", full of),例如 useful;再如 -*ish*(一点),例如 grayish;以及 -*less*(没、不),例如 valueless。同样的,-*ing* 也可以视为形容词字尾,弦外之音是"正在"、"一直"。

• The dog is <u>black</u>. 那是只黑狗。

• The dog is **barking**.

那只狗在叫。

现在分词 barking 和普通形容词 black 都出现于 be 动词后面,都可以视为**补语**,形容主语 dog,只不过现在分词 -*ing* 字尾要加上进行的暗示。

### 7.1.2 分词与形容词的关系

**过去分词**与现在分词一样,可以出现在两种形容词位置来形容名词,不过它的弦外 之音是**被动或完成的暗示**,要加上"被"、"已经"来解释。

• Clean water is safe to drink.

干净水可以安全饮用。

• Boiled water is safe to drink.

开水可以安全饮用。

• The water was **boiling** away.

水沸腾了。

过去分词 boiled 和形容词 clean 同样放在名词短语中的位置,同样形容 water,只不过多了"被煮过了"的暗示。这种"被动"、"完成"的意思也就是过去分词的弦外之音。除此之外,它与一般的形容词并无不同。

The water is <u>clean</u>.
 水很干净。

• The water is **boiled**.

水是煮开过的。

过去分词 boiled 可以视为和 clean 一样,是形容词补语,放在 be 动词后面来形容 主语 water。一般语法说 be + Ven 是被动态。可是,离开了 be 动词,boiled water 还是要解释为"被煮过的水"。所以,"被动"的意味和 be 动词之间没有必然的关联性,

不如直接把过去分词本身视为形容词。况且, 放在 be 动词后面的过去分词, 往往也不是当作被动来解释, 而要解释为"完成"的暗示。所以:

# 7.1.3 分词形容词

表 7.1: 表示感受的分词形容词

形容人的感受 sth 使、令人感受到 aggravate aggravated aggravating alarm alarmed alarming amaze amazed amazing amuse amused amusing annoy annoyed annoying appease appeased appeasing astonish astonished astonishing bore bored boring captivate captivated captivating challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited amazing aggravating aggravated aggravating aggravated aggravating aggravating aggravating aggravated aggravating aggravated aggravating aggravated aggravated aggravated aggravated aggravated aggravated aggravated amazing amuse amazen amazen aggravated aggravated amazing amuse amazing amuse amazing amuse amazing amoying appease appeasing astonishing boring captivationg captivate	—————————————————————————————————————	: 7.1: 衣尔恩安的分 	
alarm alarmed alarming amaze amazed amazing amuse amused amusing annoy annoyed annoying appease appeased appeasing astonish astonished astonishing bore bored boring captivate captivated captivating challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing convince convinced depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited	初刊床主		•
alarm alarmed alarming amaze amazed amazing amuse amused amusing annoy annoyed annoying appease appeased appeasing astonish astonished astonishing bore bored boring captivate captivated captivating challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing convince convinced depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited	aggravate	aggravated	aggravating
amaze amazed amazing amuse amused amusing annoy annoyed annoying appease appeased appeasing astonish astonished astonishing bore bored boring captivate captivated captivating challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing convince convinced convincing depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited			
amuse amused amusing  annoy annoyed annoying  appease appeased appeasing  astonish astonished astonishing  bore bored boring  captivate captivated captivating  challenge challenged challenging  charm charmed charming  comfort comforted comforting  confuse confused confusing  convince convinced convincing  depress depressed depressing  disappoint disappointed disappointing  discourage discouraged discouraging  disturb disturbed disturbing  embarrass embarrassed embarrassing  entertain entertained entertaining  excite excited	amaze	amazed	<u> </u>
annoy annoyed annoying appease appeased appeasing astonish astonished astonishing bore bored boring captivate captivated captivating challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused convincing depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained exciting	amuse	amused	9
astonish astonished astonishing bore bored boring captivate captivated captivating challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing convince convinced depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	annoy	annoyed	9
astonish astonished astonishing bore bored boring captivate captivated captivating challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing convince convinced depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained exciting		appeased	, ,
bore bored boring captivate captivated captivating challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing convince convinced convincing depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained excited exciting			
captivate captivated captivating challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing convince convinced convincing depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disqust disgusted disgusting disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	bore		9
challenge challenged challenging charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing convince convinced convincing depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disgust disgusted disgusting disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	captivate	captivated	C
charm charmed charming comfort comforted comforting confuse confused confusing convince convinced convincing depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disgust disgusted disgusting disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	•	challenged	
confuse confused confusing convince convinced convincing depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disgust disgusted disgusting disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	· ·	charmed	
convince convinced convincing  depress depressed depressing  disappoint disappointed disappointing  discourage discouraged discouraging  disgust disgusted disgusting  disturb disturbed disturbing  embarrass embarrassed embarrassing  entertain entertained entertaining  excite excited exciting	comfort	comforted	comforting
depress depressed depressing disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disgust disgusted disgusting disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	confuse	confused	confusing
disappoint disappointed disappointing discourage discouraged discouraging disgust disgusted disgusting disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	convince	convinced	convincing
discourage discouraged discouraging disgust disgusted disgusting disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	depress	depressed	depressing
disgust disgusted disgusting  disturb disturbed disturbing  embarrass embarrassed embarrassing  entertain entertained entertaining  excite excited exciting	disappoint	disappointed	disappointing
disturb disturbed disturbing embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	discourage	discouraged	discouraging
embarrass embarrassed embarrassing entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	disgust	disgusted	disgusting
entertain entertained entertaining excite excited exciting	disturb	disturbed	disturbing
excite excited exciting	embarrass	embarrassed	embarrassing
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	entertain	entertained	entertaining
exhaust exhausted exhausting	excite	excited	exciting
O O	exhaust	exhausted	exhausting
frighten frightened frightening	frighten	frightened	frightening
horrify horrified horrifying	horrify	horrified	horrifying
interest interested interesting	interest	interested	interesting
petrify petrified petrifying	petrify	petrified	petrifying

Continued on next page

84 第七章 分词

	please	pleased	pleasing
	puzzle	puzzled	puzzling
	relax	relaxed	relaxing
	satisfy	satisfied	satisfying
	shock	shocked	shocking
	soothe	soothed	soothing
	surprise	surprised	surprising
	tempt	tempted	tempting
	terrify	terrified	terrifying
	thrill	thrilled	thrilling
	tire	tired	tiring
	touch	touched	touching
	worry	worried	worrying
_			

表 7.1: 表示感受的分词形容词 (Continued)

分词形容词 (PARTICAL ADJECTIVES) 一些形容词是由动词分词形式(现在分词或过去分词)派生出来的,他们描述了人自身或某些事物带来的**情绪感受**(见表 7.1.分词形容词例句:

- He **is disappointed** at his scores.
- His scores are disappointing.
- I <u>am so excited</u> to see a new Disney film.
- The new Disney film I just watched is exciting."
- My younger sister **felt bored** at home.
- The show <u>was boring</u>, so my younger sister went home.
- The students <u>are interested</u> in learning English interactively.
- Learning English interactively <u>is an interesting way</u> to improve your speaking skills.

除表中所列表情绪或感受的分词形容词外, gone, done, fallen 等词也可以是分词形容词。

- I can't find my wallet. It's gone. 我找不到皮夹。它不见了。
- The leaves <u>are</u> all <u>fallen</u>, now that winter is here.
   冬天一到、叶子全掉光了。

• I'm done. It's all yours.

我已经好了, 该你用了。

分词形容词更加体现了动词分词和形容词之间的递差度。

# 7.2 现在分词与过去分词词缀分析

现在分词与过去分词之间的选择,牵涉到主动被动的判断,所以和动词的及物不及物有关。这是一个相当麻烦的问题:怎么看动词是及物还是不及物?如果每个动词还要去背它是及物或不及物,那太辛苦了。英语动词很多,背不胜背,可是使用到的词根有限。所以做一下**词缀分析**往往可以决定及物不及物的问题。

- Water **consists** of hydrogen and oxygen.
- Water is **composed** of hydrogen and oxygen. 水由氢分子和氧分子组成。

consist 的词根 *sist* 是 stand 或 be 的意思,都是**不及物**,配合词首 *con(together)*,可以解释为 stand together 或 be together。既然它是不及物动词,自然没有被动态,也没有宾语。可是 compose 就不同了。词根 *pos* 解释为 place(放),是**及物动词**,所以可以有**被动态**,才可以用到过去分词 composed。

完整词缀表可见表 A.3,表 A.4。

## **7.3** Test

下面有篇文章,是改写自一篇阅读测验题目,把每个句子中都放进去一个以上的现在分词(pp)或过去分词(Ven),偶尔也有几个动名词(Gr)或不定式(Inf),请读者看看这些动状词的用法,与所学过的观念印证一下。

A decade ago, nearly a million and a half elephants were <u>living</u> in Africa. During the past ten years, the number of elephants has dwindled to about one half. These elephants are still <u>being killed</u> for their tusks, which are worth a lot of money, in spite of an <u>increasing</u> outcry against elephant <u>hunting</u>. Most elephants <u>killed</u> today die in the hand of illegal hunters.

A **grass-consuming** animal, the elephant eats as much as 300 pounds a day when fully **grown**. **Wandering** far and wide in their search for food, elephants can move dozens of miles a day. **Failing to find the** grasses they like best, they may turn to the trees and eat them.

86 第七章 分词

Today, the <u>remaining</u> grasslands for the elephant are seriously <u>reduced</u>. Many places along their migration routes have <u>been turned</u> into farms. Some elephants are <u>killed</u> by farmers while <u>feeding</u> on the farms.

What can the people do here in Taiwan about a <u>threatened</u> animal <u>living</u> so far away? First, we should know that there is a law <u>protecting</u> elephants, even here. People cannot buy or smuggle items <u>made</u> from ivory or any part of the elephant's body. Some <u>handicapped</u> persons <u>living</u> on <u>making</u> name chops have <u>been protesting</u> that the law impairs their livelihood, <u>making</u> it impossible for them <u>to earn</u> money. There are, of course, many substitute materials for elephant tusks, water buffalo horns <u>being</u> an important one.

Most countries are now no longer <u>importing</u> ivory. It is <u>hoped</u> that the ban on <u>buying</u> or <u>selling</u> ivory will save the <u>remaining</u> African elephants. Wildlife conservation organizations like the WWF are not <u>facing</u> the problem <u>lying</u> down. <u>Claiming</u> that the <u>ivory-producing</u> countries are unable <u>to protect</u> the elephants there, they are <u>proposing</u> some <u>market-oriented</u> approaches to <u>solving</u> the problem.

#### 译文:

10年前,几近150万头大象还在非洲存活。而这10年来,大象数目已减少了一半。 尽管对偷猎大象的谴责日渐高涨,但为了获得贵重的象牙,这些大象仍一直遭到猎杀如 今遇害的大象大都死于非法盗猎者之手。

大象是草食动物,成年象一天可吃掉300磅的草。长途跋涉、到处寻找食物时,大象一天可移动数十英里的距离。若找不到最喜欢的草、大象会转而吃树。

今日仅存、可供大象活动的草原已严重减少。大象迁移路线上有多处已开辟成农场。 有些大象在农场觅食时被农人打死。

在台湾的人,对遥远地方这种饱受威胁的动物能出什么力?首先,我们要了解大象受法律保护,在台湾亦然。象牙或大象身体任何部分的制品都禁止走私、买卖。有些以刻印维生的残障人士抗议这条法律侵害他们的生计,让他们不赚钱。当然象牙有许多替代材料,很主要的一种就是水牛角。

大部分国家已不再进口象牙。希望买卖象牙的禁令能挽救现存的非洲象。野生动物保护组织,如世界自然基金会,面对这个问题也不是纯然束手无策。他们表示象牙生产国无法保护国内的大象,所以提出了一些市场导向的方法来解决这一问题。

7.4 ANSWER 87

### 7.4 Answer

A decade ago, nearly a million and a half elephants were **living** in Africa. During the past ten years, the number of elephants has dwindled to about one half. These elephants are still **killed** for their tusks, which are worth being Ven pp a lot of money, in spite of an **increasing** outcry against elephant hunting. Gr **killed** today die in the hand of illegal hunters. Most elephants Ven grass-consuming animal, the elephant eats as much as 300 pounds a day when fully **Wandering** far and wide in their search for food, grown. Ven elephants can move dozens of miles a day. to find the grasses they Failing inf pp like best, they may turn to the trees and eat them. Today, the **remaining** grasslands for the elephant are seriously **reduced**. Ven pp Many places along their migration routes have **been turned** into farms. Some **killed** by farmers while **feeding** on the farms. elephants are Ven pp What can the people do here in Taiwan about a **threatened** animal **living** so far away? First, we should know that there is a law **protecting** elephants, pp even here. People cannot buy or smuggle items **made** from ivory or any part of the elephant's body. Some handicapped persons **living** on **making** name Ven pp been protesting that the law impairs their livelihood, chops have making it impossible for them to earn money. There are, of course, many substitute inf materials for elephant tusks, water buffalo horns **being** an important one. Most countries are now no longer **importing** ivory. It is **hoped** that the Ven pp ban on **buying** or **selling** ivory will save the **remaining** African elephants. Gr pp

第七章 分词

# 第八章 形容词

# 8.1 定语和表语

能做定语或表语是形容词的主要特点。

**定语 (Attributive)** 置于限定词(包括零冠词)和名词代词之间,修饰名词或代词的成分,前置修饰作用,补充说明(另可见 24.1 节)。

形容词作定语 如 "a small table" (一张小桌子),其中"small"是前置修饰语。

代词作定语 如 "this book" (这本书), 其中 "this" 是前置修饰语。

数词作定语 如 "three boys" (三个男孩), 其中 "three" 是前置修饰语。

**名词作定语** 如 "car factory" (汽车厂), 其中 "car" 作为名词也可以充当前置修饰语。

名词所有格作定语 如 "Peter's car" (彼得的车), 其中 "Peter's" 是前置修饰语。

- 表语 (PREDICATIVE) 起主语或宾语补语的作用,用来说明主语或宾语其性质、状态、身份的成分。
  - This car is <u>red</u>.
  - He thought the painting **ugly**.

# 8.2 以 -ly 结尾的形容词

- 一些形容词以 -ly 结尾,但一般不作副词。如 costly, cowardly, deadly, friendly, likely, lively, lonely, lovely, silly, ugly, unlikely.
  - She gave me a **friendly** smile.
  - Her <u>singing</u> was lovely.
     friendly, lovely 没有副词形式。

90 第八章 形容词

- She smiled in a **friendly** way. (not She smiled friendly.)
- He gave a silly laugh. (not He laughed silly.)

early, hourly, nightly, daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, yearly and leisurely 既是副词也是形容词。

## 8.3 形容词和副词的同音同形异义词

fast a fast car drive fast

**close** They are <u>close</u> friends, and they live <u>close</u> by.

close 作形容词或副词时,发音是/klous/,klous/,意为"接近的(地)".

**short** She had **short** hair. She cut her hair **short**.

**long** Did you have to wait a **long** time? (to wait **long**)

**slow** a **slow** car drive **slow/slowly** 

有一些副词可能有两种形式(如 late 和 lately),一种与其形容词形式一样,一种以 ly 结尾。这两种形式往往意思不同或用法不同。

一些诅咒语可以既作形容词又作副词,如 bloody。

**bloody** 'You <u>bloody</u> fool. You didn't look where you were going."I <u>bloody</u> did.'

"你这个笨蛋,你没有看你往哪走吗?""我他妈看了。"

**dead** dead 作副词时, 意思是"的确, 完全, 非常", 例如 dead ahead, dead certain, dead drunk, dead right, dead slow, dead straight, dead sure, dead tired.

deadly deadly 则是形容词,意思是"致命的"。表达这个意思的副词是 fatally.

easy easy 在非正式词组里作副词:

- Go  $\underline{easy}$ ! (= Not too fast!)
- Easy come, easy go.
- Take it **easy**! (= Relax!)
- Easier said than done.

fair fair 也可用在某些词组的动词后面,用作副词。

- to play **fair**, to fight **fair**
- to hit/win something fair and square

fairly fairly 一般修饰形容词和副词,表示并不怎样高,凑合的意思。

- 'How was the film?' 'Fairly good.' 还好,还凑合。
- I speak English <u>fairly</u> well enough for everyday purposes.
   我中文还好——足够应付日常需要。

fine fine 在非正式文本中用作副词,等同于 well。

- That suits me fine.
- You're doing **fine**.

finely 副词 finely 通常用作表示细微的调整。

- a finely tuned engine
- <u>finely</u> chopped onions (= cut up very small)

free, freely free 在动词后面用作副词时意思是"免费"; freely 意思是"无限制地":

- You can eat <u>free</u> in my restaurant whenever you like.
- You can speak <u>freely</u> –I won't tell anyone what you say.

hard, hardly hard 副词 "用力地努力地"; hardly 意思是 "几乎不":

- Hit it hard.
- I trained really **hard** for the marathon.
- I've <u>hardly</u> got any clean clothes left.
   我几乎没有什么干净衣服了。
- Anna works <u>hard</u>, but her elder sister <u>hardly</u> works.
   安娜努力工作,但她的姐姐几乎不工作。

high, highly high 意思 "高度高"; highly 意思 "非常, 高级的, 赞赏的":

- He can jump really **high**.
- Throw it as **high** as you can.
- It's <u>highly</u> amusing. 这非常有趣。

92 第八章 形容词

• I can **highly** recommend it. 我极力推荐它。

late, lately 形容词和副词 late 意思相近, "迟到"; 副词 lately "最近地":

- I hate arriving **late**.
- I haven't been to the theater much **lately**.

low 形容词和副词 low 意思几乎一致:

• a **low** bridge bend **low** 深弯腰

most, mostly most 是 much 的最高级,也可以用来构成形容词和副词的最高级。

- Which part of the concert did you like **most**?
- This is the **most** extraordinary day of my life.

在正式文体中,可以作"非常地"用。

• You're a **most** unusual person.

mostly 意思是 "主要 mainly, 大都 most often 或在大多数场合 in most cases":

• My friends are **mostly** non-smokers.

right, rightly right 与状语连用时,意思是"正好,精确地":

- She arrived right after breakfast.
- The snowball hit me <u>right</u> on the nose.
- Turn the gas <u>right down</u>.

right 和 rightly 都有"正确地"意思。但副词 right 只能用在动词后面,并且是 非正式的用法:

- I rightly assumed that Henry was not coming.
- You guessed right.
- It serves you right. ( ···rightly is not possible.)

straight straight 副词和形容词形式一样.

• A **straight** road goes **straight** from one place to another.

sure, surely sure 在非正式用法中"当然地":

• 'Can I borrow your tennis racket?' 'Sure.'

surely (not) 表示"想必,或难以置信":

- Surely house prices will stop rising soon!
   房价肯定会停止上涨!
- Surely you're not going out in that old coat? 你该不会穿着那件旧外套出去吧。
- "They're getting married." "Surely not!"
  "他们要结婚了。" "不会吧!"

wide, widely wide 作副词用时表示"宽地", widely 表示距离很远, 或差别很大:

- The door was wide open.
   当时那扇门大开着。
- She's traveled widely.
   它曾到处游历。
- They have widely differing opinions. 他们的意见大相径庭。

### just just 有很多个意思:

exactly 正好;恰好

- This jacket is <u>just</u> my size.
   这件夹克正合我的尺码。
- You're <u>just</u> in time. 你来得正是时候。
- It's **just** what I wanted! 这正是我想要的!

#### at this moment 此时, 刚刚

- I've <u>just</u> heard the news.
   我刚听到这个消息。
- When you arrived he had only <u>just</u> left.
   你到时他刚走。
- She has **just** been telling us about her trip to Rome.

94 第八章 形容词

她刚才一直在给我们讲她的罗马之行。

#### only, scarcely 只,简直不

- Complete set of garden tools for **just** £15.99!
- I just want somebody to love me -that's all.

#### emphasiser 强调其他词句

- You're **just** beautiful.
- I **just** love your dress.

此外还有形容词 just, 其副词为 justly, 意思是"公平地, 正义地":

• He was **justly** punished for his crimes.

**有些形容词的比较级和最高级形式用作副词**的现象, 在规范英语中也很常见(见 9.6.5 节)。 以下表示时间的 -ly 词作形容词、副词皆可: monthly, daily, hourly, nightly, quarterly, weekly, yearly。

## 8.4 以 a- 开头的形容词和副词

某些以 a- 开头的词给语言学家带来了难题。有些语法学家把它们划为形容词,有些语法学家把它们划为副词。这些以 a- 开头的词起表语作用,但只有几个能随意用作定语.

只有比较少的副词可以且只能在 be 后面作表语,如地点副词 aboard, upstairs 和时间副词,如 now, tonight。而形容词却还能和其他系动词连用。试比较系动词 be 和 seem 的不同句型:

The patient { was asleep/hungry/abroad/there. { seemed asleep/hungry. (**形容词,不能是副词** abroad/there 等) **a- 形容词必须在 be 动词后面**。因此我们可以用 **seem to be** 支持 a- 形容词或副词:

• They seemed to be abroad/there/around/afraid.

# 8.5 形容词的位置

形容词有时可以后置 (postpositive), 也就是说, 它们能紧跟在所修饰的名词或代词后面。因此, 形容词可以有三种不同的位置:

表语位置 This information is <u>useful</u>.

定语位置 <u>useful</u> information

后置 something <u>useful</u>

8.5 形容词的位置 95

#### 8.5.1 形容词的后置

形容词后置有三个类型:

**复合词** 以-body, -one, -thing, -where 结尾的复合不定代词和复合不定副词(见表 3.3), **其本身不可分拆**; 或 what else, who next 等词的**强粘性**, 使形容词倾向于被"挤出"后置。

- Anybody younger would have done better. [Any younger one]
- something (that is) useful
- Anyone (who is) intelligent can do it.
- I want to try on **something** (that is) **larger**.
- We're not going anywhere very exciting.

**有后置修饰语或有补足语的形容词** 名词短语中, 前置修饰语(见 24.1 节)不能过复杂、分量超过中心词, 以免听读困难, 因此只能被"挤出"后置。

- a band **popular in 1980s**
- a mistake typical of beginners
- I know an actor (who is) suitable for the part.
- They have a house (which is) larger than yours.
- The boys (who were) easiest to teach were in my class.

写作中, 如果硬要将前置修饰短语硬要放到名词短语中, 就必须先加上 hyphen 制造成复合词。如果原先的短语中有复数的名词存在, 还得先把 -s 去掉, 因为要当形容词单词使用, 不能有复数。例如:

- a turn-of-the-century publication
   一册在世纪转换之际出版的作品
- an eye-opening experience 令人大开眼界的经验
- a five-year-old child 一个五岁小孩
- a 100-watt light bulb
  - 一支 100 瓦的灯泡

请注意例句中的 **eye**, **year**, **watt** 等字都是因为转作形容词使用而把 *-s* 去掉。 **惯用搭配** the president elect, heir apparent 等少见的惯用搭配或舶来词。

# 8.6 可作名词短语中心语的形容词

- 凡是能**前置修饰人称名词的形容词** (the young people),可以作名词短语中心词 (the young). 这些中心词具有**复数**和**类指**的含义,指各种不同类别、种类或类型的人。
- The young (people) in spirit enjoy life.
- This is a system in which <u>the rich (people)</u> are cared for and <u>the poor (people)</u> are left to suffer.

这是一个富人得到照顾,穷人受苦的制度。suffer / sʌfə(r)/ 受苦、受难。

- 一些表示民族的形容词可以作名词短语的中心词:
- You <u>French</u> and we <u>British</u> ought to be allies.
- 有些形容词可以用作含有**抽象意义**的名词短语的中心词,特别是一些**最高级形容词**。 我们有时可以将其之后的 **thing** 省略。因抽象,后面动词用**单数**。
- The <u>latest (thing/news)</u> is that he is going to run for re-election.
- The **best** (thing) is yet to come.
- in common (thing)

# 8.7 名词短语中形容词的顺序

在名词短语中,若有两个以上的形容词单词出现,就会产生顺序的问题。这是英语写作要先克服的问题。例如:

限定词	形容词	名词	翻译
three	big red	apples	三个又大又红的苹果

首先来理清一个观念: big 和 red 是**两个形容词单词,不是一个形容词语**,因为这两个词分别独立来形容 apples。然后来谈谈顺序的问题。一般的语法书上在此只是列出一些大小、形状、颜色等等的顺序要求学生背下来。其实形容词的顺序不必背,而有一定的道理可循。**在定语中,越是表达名词属性的形容词越要靠近名词。亦即,越是不可变的、客观的特质越要靠近名词。反之,越是可变的、临时的、主观的因素则越要放得远离名词**。研究下面这个例子:

8.8 TEST 97

• The murderer left behind a bloody old black Italian leather glove. 凶手丢下一只沾血、老旧、黑色、意大利制的皮手套。

leather 放得最近 glove, 因为 leather 是内容, glove 是形式。内容与形式是不可分的。就算手套剪碎了,皮革材料还在里面。表示产地的 Italian 也是属于不可变的因素。而且, an Italian glove (意大利手套)有相当强的表示属性的功能——告诉别人这是哪一种手套。至于说颜色 black,在皮革染上黑色之后就不会变了。old 这个字则是手套制成之后由新慢慢变旧。至于 bloody,原先没有沾血,行凶时沾上。只要拿去洗,随时可以变干净,旧则不能再变新了。所以,bloody 这个形容词和"手套"的属性最无关,也是最可变的修饰语,就要放在这一堆形容词的最前面。再看一个例子:

He's wearing <u>a handsome old brown U.S. Air Force leather flying jacket</u>.
 他穿一件帅气、陈旧、褐色、美国空军的皮质飞行夹克。

这个例子提供读者依据上述原则去揣摩一下。提示: handsome 是主观的字眼。夹克帅不帅, 见仁见智, 所以 handsome 是和 jacket 的属性最无关的字眼。而 flying jacket 一定要放在一起才能表示"飞行夹克", 所以 flying 是表示这种夹克属性最强的字眼, 要放得最接近。

### **8.8** Test

请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

1. Stamp-collecting can be enjoyed by the rich and the poor					
	(A) like	(B) similar			
	(C) same	(D) alike			
2. \	We were quite excited to catch the bird	·			
	(A) live	(B) living			
	(C) alive	(D) lively			
3. They have improved their financial status. Now they are off than before.					
	(A) well	(B) good			
	(C) better	(D) richer			
4. To be heard over the noise of the construction work outside, he tried to talk					
_ •	(A) in the loudest voice possible	(B) in the loudest voice possibly			
	(C) in the possible voice loudest	(D) in the possibly voice loudest			

5. Miss Smith makes her own clo	othes by hand.
(A) the most of	(B) most of
(C) the most	(D) most
6. John is not quite as his sister.	
(A) good as a student	(B) as good a student
(C) as a good student	(D) an as good student
7. The most time of life is	
(A) joyful/young	(B) joy/young
(C) enjoyable/youth	(D) joyfully/youth
8. His intelligence is	
(A) superior than mine	(B) more superior than hers
(C) superior to yours	(D) more superior to me
9. We all found it to understand	Lesson Three.
(A) difficult	(B) difficulty
(C) difficultly	•
10. All four ways were open and Mar	rk was to travel in any direction.
(A) free	(B) freely
(C) freedom	(D) freeing
11. It was the first rainfall within	half a year in this city.
(A) noteworth	(B) noteworthy
(C) noteworthly	(D) noteworthing
12. New Yorkers accept the city's noi	se as natural and
(A) inevitably	(B) inevitable
(C) inevitability	(D) neutrality
13. Americans are becoming of th	e dangers of cigarettes.
(A) aware	(B) awareness
(C) awake	(D) awoke
14. A farmer needs to know word	s than a lawyer does.
(A) less	(B) fewer
(C) more	(D) better
15. We found it of importance to 1	rebuild the wooden bridge.
(A) very	(B) too

8.9 ANSWER 99

(D) utmost
l began to look for the obscure city.
(B) the larger
(D) the largest
ng trip because no two days are
(B) likely
(D) alike
(B) most kind
(D) more kind
(B) the deepest
(D) the deeper
d fork.
(B) by far as easy
(D) much easier

### 8.9 Answer

- 1. (D) 四个答案中只有 alike 这个形容词的位置能放在它所修饰的名词后面。另有一些 a- 开头的形容词如 alive 等也是放在名词后面。
  - 2. (C) 与上题相同,只有 alive 可放在名词后面。
- 3. (C) 因为下文有 than before, 所以要用比较级 (C 或 D)。空格后面有 off, 表示原来是短语 well off (富有), 变成比较级 better off, 故选 C。
- 4. (A) 这里用到最高级,要有一个表示范围的修饰语。to talk in the loudest voice that was possible,以关系从句 that was possible(有可能的范围中)来修饰 the loudest voice(最大的声音)。然后再把关系从句简化,省略掉其中的 that was,即得到 A 的答案。
- 5. (B) 答案后面有名词短语 her own clothes, 所以前面应有介词(A 或 B)。在此的意思是她"大部分"的衣服,并非一般的最高级,故用 most of,不要冠词(加上冠词后要解释为"最……的")。
  - 6. (B) 空格后面的连接词 as 表示这是一组 as…as 的比较级。强调语气时可用 quite

as···as,表示"完全一样",其否定即是 not quite as···as。not quite as good 放在一起,成为形容词短语后,不再能放在 a student 之间的位置,所以只好移到前面,成为 B 的答案。

- 7. (C) 这是词类的判断。前空格在名词 time 前面,应为形容词(A 或 C)。后空格应用名词"青春"作为主语 time of life 的补语,故选 C。
- 8. (C) 表示优于(superior to),劣于(inferior to)这两个短语不用 than。另外,his intelligence 可以和 your intelligence 或 yours 比较(如 C),但不能和 me 比较(如 D),因为智力要与智力比,不能和人比,这是比较级对称的要求。
- 9. (A) it 是虚字,暂代 found 之后的宾语位置,代表后面的不定式 to understand Lesson Three。it 后面的位置是宾语补语的位置,应用形容词(只有 A)。
  - 10. (A) 空格是 was 后面的主语补语位置,应用形容词,故选 A。
- 11. (B) 这是字形的问题。the first 和 rainfall 之间是形容词的位置,四个答案中只有 B 是形容词,另外三个在英语中根本查无此词。
- 12. (B) 连接词 and 前面有形容词 natural, 后面只能用对称的形容词, 故选 B。
- 13. (A) become 后面是补语位置,应用形容词(只有 A 和 C; D 的 awoke 是动词)。 而 C 的 awake 后面应接 to, 只有 A 的 aware 是接 of, 所以选 A。
- 14. (B) words 可数,故不能用不可数的 less (A)。再从意思上来看, 农夫该认得的字自然比律师要少,故选 B。
- 15. (D) 空格是形容词位置,而只有 utmost (最高的)是形容词。
- 16. (B) 只有两张地图, 所以要用比较级, 不能用最高级, 故排除 C 和 D。而两张中较大"那张"已充分指出是哪一张, 所以要用定冠词。
- 17. (D) like 是介词, likewise 是副词,都不能作补语。likely 是形容词,不过意思是"可能性不小",在此意思不通,故用另一个形容词 alike (—样的、很像的)。
- 18. (D) 这是 This action was very kind 和 This action was not very wise 这两句的比较。比较点在 kind 与 wise 上面的程度副词, Which is more? 所以并不是 kind 或 wise 的比较级问题, 而是程度副词(如 much)的比较级问题——much 的比较级是 more。
- 19. (A) 空格是补语位置,而且是单纯的形容词 deep,不是 a deep lake 的省略,因为 a deep lake at this point(这地方有个深湖)讲不通。单纯的形容词 deep 就不会有冠词的问题,就算最高级也是一样,因为冠词只跟名词走。

8.9 ANSWER 101

20. (C) 下文有连接词 as,故上文应有 as 来完成比较级,而在 B 和 C 中,by far 只能表示"差得远",不适合表达"一样",所以选 C。

# 第九章 副词

# 9.1 副词的词态分类

由千副词包罗万象,类别繁多,所以副词是传统词类中最模糊不清、最令人困惑的词类。的确,不如干脆说,副词不像其他词类那样,可以有确切的定义。因此,有的语法学家把副词中的某些类型的词全部。

从形态上来说,我们可以把副词分为三种类型。其中两种是**封闭类(简单副词和复合副词)**;另一种是**开放类(派生副词)**:

- **简单副词** 如 just, only, well。许多简单副词表示位置和方向, 如 back, down, near, out, under。
- **复合副词** 如 somehow, somewhere, therefore; 和文体上极为正式的 whereupon, hereby, herewith, whereto 等由两个及以上单词组成的副词。
- 派生副词 大多数派生副词有 -ly 后缀。

派生副词就是通过形容词(和分词形容词)加上 -ly 后缀产生出来的, 如 oldly, slowly 等。

其他一些不常见的派生后缀有(详见表 A.4):

- -wise clockwise
- -ward(s) northwards, towards
- -style cowboy-style
- -fashion schoolboy-fashion

# 9.2 形容词构成开放式 -ly 副词的规则

● 以辅音字母 + -le 结尾的形容词, e 变 y, 如 simple ~ simply comfortable ~ comfortably 。 例外有 whole ~ wholly。

104 第九章 副词

● 以辅音字母 +y 结尾的形容词, 常常把 y 改成 i 再加 -ly。如 happy ~ happily。
而另一些词构成副词时, 要保留原来的 -y: spry ~ spryly wry ~ wryly
但有些词可以有两种拼法: dry ~ drily/dryly sly ~ slily/slyly。
请注意下列元音字母 + -e 形容词的副词, 如 coy ~ coyly 但是 gay ~ gaily
due ~ duly true ~ truly.

- ic 和 -ical 结尾的形容词可以构成以 -ically 结尾的相应副词: economic(al) ~ economically tragic(al) ~ tragically 只有 public ~ publicly 是例外。
- 以 -ed 结尾的分词可以构成以 -edly 结尾的副词,但应读为 /ɪdli/marked /ma:kt/ /ˈma:kɪdli/learned /ˈlɜ:nɪd/~ learnedly /ˈlɜ:nɪdli/

# 9.3 附加副词和连词

#### 9.3.1 联加副词和连词

so和 yet 等可作联加副词,在作连接词用和句法特点这两个方面都和并列连词 and, but 相似。但其次序固定。

• We paid him a large amount of money. **So** he kept quiet about what he saw. 以上两个从句次序如果颠倒, 意思就不对了, 因为前文指明原因。从属连词 because 引导的从句没有这种问题。

联加副词前可以加并列连词, 如前文可改为:

• We paid him a large amount of money, <u>and so</u> he kept quiet about what he saw.

### 9.3.2 附加副词和连词

when [时间], where [在或去的地方], how [方式], why [理由]等从属连词可以看成是融合了连词和附加状语代用式 (pro-adjunct) 的特点。

where 和 when 引导状语从句:

- He saw them  $\begin{cases} when \\ at the time(s) at which \end{cases}$  they were in Rome.
- I'll go  $\begin{cases} where \\ to the place(s) to which \end{cases}$  they go.

• We'll go  $\begin{cases} where \\ to the place(s) at which \end{cases}$  it is comfortable. at 强调的是地点、较为静态; to 强调的是方向和目的, 较为动态。

where, which, 和用的较少的 why 还可以引导状语关系从句:

- the place {where at which} he is staying.
   the time {when at which} she was there.

where, when, why 和 how 都可以引导名词性关系从句(自由关系从句):

- I know  $\begin{cases} where \\ at which place \end{cases}$  he is staying.
- I wonder  $\begin{cases} when \\ at which time \end{cases}$  she was here.
- I realize  $\begin{cases} why \\ the reason for which \end{cases}$  he did it.
- That was  $\begin{cases} how \\ the way in which \end{cases}$  they treated her.

这四个以wh-开头的词也可用作疑问代用式,其中,where = at what place, when = at what time, why = for what reason, how = in what way。最为常用不再给出 例句。

#### 副词作介词补足语 9.4

许多表示时间和地点的副词能用作介词补足语。

最常用的地点副词作介词补足语的是 here, there:

- Come **over here**.
- How do we get **out of here**.

home(也可以看作是名词)可以作 at, (away) from, close to, near, toward(s) 的补足语; **其他地点副词只能和介词 from 连用**:

• You've got a letter **from abroad**.

最常用作介词补足语的时间副词见图 9.1

106 第九章 副词

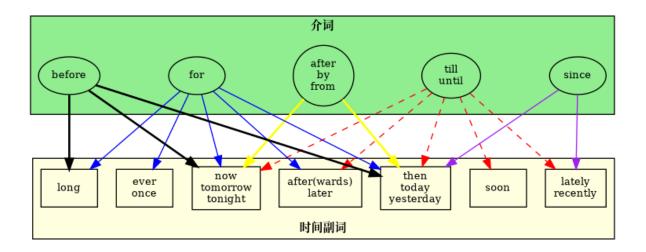


图 9.1: 最常用作介词补足语的时间副词

# 9.5 副词小品词 up, down, back, away 等

down, in, up 等有时不是介词,而是副词。如以下句子中,左边介词(后接宾语),右边为副词小品词(无宾语)。

- I ran **down** the road.
- Something's climbing **up** my leg.
- He's **in** his office.

- Please sit down.
- She's not **up** yet.
- You can go in.

这种短小的副词通常被叫作"副词小品词",包括: about, above, across, ahead, along, (a)round, aside, away, back, before, behind, below, by, down, forward, home, in, near, off, on, out, over, past, through, under, up.

许多词既可用作副词小品词,也可用作介词,但也有例外:back,away (只能作副词小品词); from, during (只能是介词).

副词小品词往往与动词连用,构成双词动词,有时会有全新意思(如 break down, put off, work out, give up),通常被叫做"短语动词"

副词小品词和形容词一样,往往用作 be 动词的补语。

- Why are all the lights **on**?
- The match will be **over** by 4.30.
- Hello! You're back!
- I'm <u>off</u> -see you later!

# 9.6 形容词和副词的比较级

#### 9.6.1 可分等级的形容词和副词类型

可分等级的形容词和副词可以有三种类型的比较,即:

**向较高程度的比较** 通过屈折变化 -er 和 -est; 迂回法 more 和 most 的比较级、最高级表示(见表 9.1)。

相同程度的比较 通过 as/so ... as 表示。

- Anna is **as tall as** Bill.
- Anna is not **as/so tall as** Bill.

向较低程度的比较 通过 little 的比较级 less 和最高级 least 表示。

- This problem is <u>less difficult</u> than the previous one.
   这个问题比上题难度低。
- This is the <u>least difficult</u> problem of all.
   这是所有问题中最简单(不困难)的。

	原级	比较级	最高级	
屈折变化形式				
形容词	high	higher	highest	
副词	soon	sooner	soonest	
迂回法形式				
形容词	complex	more complex	most complex	
副词	comfortably	more comfortably	most comfortably	

表 9.1: 形容词和副词的比较级

### 9.6.2 不规则的比较级、最高级形式

不规则的比较级、最高级形式较少(见表 9.2)。

其中, farther/farthest 和 further /furthest 这两组词既是形容词又是副词。farther/farthest 主要只用来表达物理时空距离较远、最远。further /furthest 则囊括上述含义,并且还可以有"进一步,较多,最近" (more, additional, later) 的意思。

108 第九章 副词

原形	比较级	最高级	
bad/sick/evil	worse	worst	
far(通用,进一步)	further	furthest	
far(时空距离远)	farther	farthest	
good/well	better	best	
in	inner	innermost	
little	less	least	
many/much/a lot	more	most	
old	older/elder	oldest/eldest	
out	outer	outermost	

表 9.2: 不规则的比较级和最高级

• I have to travel <u>further/farther</u> to work now.

现在我得走更远的路去上班。

Let's consider this point <u>further</u>.
 让我们更深入地考虑这一点。

• The school will be closed until <u>further</u> notice.

学校将关闭, 直至进一步的通知。

elder 其实不是真正的比较级形式,因为在它后面不能跟 than,而要用规则屈折变化 older。elder 只能指人,并多用在家庭成员出生顺序,如 elder brother/sister 表示哥、姐姐。

### 9.6.3 规则的比较级屈折变化

- 以单个元音字母 + 单个辅音字母结尾的形容词,先双拼辅音字母,再加 -er 和-est 。 big ~ bigger ~ biggest sad ~ sadder ~ saddest
- 以辅音字母 + y 结尾的形容词, 先把 y 改为 i, 再加 -er 和-est。
   angry ~ angrier ~ angriest
   early ~ earlier ~ earliest
- 词尾以哑音 -e 结尾, 去掉 e, 再加 -er 和-est。
   pure ~ purer ~ purest brave ~ braver ~ bravest
   -ee 结尾的去掉末尾的 e, 再加 -er 和-est。
   free ~ freer ~ freest

#### 9.6.4 屈折法比较和迂回法比较之间的选择

- 一般来讲,**单音节形容词通常用屈折变化**。 例外是 real, right, wrong 和介词 like 只用迂回形式来构成比较级和最高级。
- 大部分双音节形容词既可以用屈折变化,也可用迂回法。 对于以 -ing, -ed, -ful, -less 等类复合词的双音节形容词来说,只能用迂回法。
- 三个及以上音节的形容词,只能用迂回法。 但是带否定前缀 un- 的形容词两者都可用:
- unhappy ~ unhappier / more unhappy ~ unhappiest / most unhappy
- untidy ~ untidier / more untidy ~ untidiest/ most untidy
- 以 -ly 结尾的派生副词可能因音节数量问题,不能用屈折变化,只能用迂回法。

## 9.6.5 比较级和最高级中 the 的用法

以下情况要加 the:

最高级作定语,修饰名词中心语时,前面要加 the 或其他定指限定词。 如:

- Anna is **the/their youngest** child.
- Susan found the most blackberries.
- Della is <u>the/our most</u> efficient publisher.
   [efficient /ɪˈfɪʃnt/ 效率高的;有功效的。]
- John is <u>the shorter</u> of the twins. 这个句子中虽然是比较级,可是 shorter 在双胞胎之中充分指出说的是哪一位,所以仍然要有定冠词。

以下情况不必加或不加 the:

than 结构中的比较级 一般不用加 the。

- 不与其他实体进行比较 仅限于对某一实体的修饰,不特定, most 不加 the。这里的 most 其实是限定词或增强语,而非迂回法比较级中修饰形容词、代表最高级的 most 副词。
  - <u>Most</u> books in my collection are science fiction.
  - Most people can sing a little.

110 第九章 副词

- Anna is (the) youngest.
- Mangoes are (the) most expensive in early summer.

重复和并列比较级 表示程度逐渐增强,不加冠词。

- She is getting better and better.
- They are becoming more and more difficult.

形容词比较级或最高级作为副词 不加冠词。

- Speak clearer! [more clearly]
- This newsreader speaks clearest of all. [most clearly]
- It's easier said than done. [more easily]
- Ami ran (the) slowest.
- The car ran went (the) **slower and slower**.

**已有冠词、所有格、人名或地理名称** 当名词短语中已有所有格代词、人名等中位限定词 (中位限定词互斥,只可取其一,详见表 2.4 ),或地理名称在 most 前后时,已有 足够限定功能,它**消除了限定词 the 的必要性**。

- She is **my best friend**.
- Most of these people can sing a little.
- I've read most of Shakespeare.
- The Romans conquered <u>most of England.</u> [conquered: /ˈkɒŋkə(r)//ˈkɑːŋkər/, 征服]

### 9.6.6 比较级的前置修饰语

形容词和副词的原级可为强化语 (如 very, quite, so 等) 所前置修饰。

• The job was **very easy**.

形容词和副词的比较级,不论是屈折变化形式,还是迂回形式,都可由增强语 (如 much, far 或 very much) 前置修饰:

- The job was **(very) much/far easier(more difficult)** than I thought.
- She writes <u>(very) much/far better</u> than she used to.

下面是常常与比较级连用的其他强化语 (和强化名词短语):

- somewhat/rather easier than ...
- a lot/great/good/ easier than ...

# 9.7 方法、状态的副词(Adverbs of Manner)

这一类的副词是修饰动词专用的,典型的拼法是形容词加上 -ly 字尾。既然它是修饰动词的,那么原则上它的位置应该尽量和动词接近,通常是放在动词后面的位置。可是,副词是修饰语,属于不怎么重要的元素,如果在句中有宾语、补语等主要元素存在时,方法、状态的副词就要向后挪,让宾语、补语等元素先出来。假如后移的结果造成副词与它所修饰的动词之间距离太远,那么也可以另辟蹊径,把方法、状态的副词调到动词前面的位置去,以维持修饰语必须和它所修饰的对象接近的原则。以下分别就五种基本句型举例说明。

#### 9.7.1 S+V

• The child giggled  $\overline{S}$  V happily under the caress of its mother.

小孩在母亲抚摸下笑得很开心。

介词短语 under the caress 在此先不讨论,留待后面章节来解说。本句中动词 giggled 之后已无主要元素存在,所以修饰动词的 happily 可以直接放在动词后面。当然,如果 happily 放在动词前面,成为:

• The child happily giggled ....

仍然是正确的句子。在动词前面,也是紧邻动词的位置,所以符合修饰语要与修饰对象接近的原则。但**表示方法、状态的副词,除非有特殊原因,还是放在动词后面为佳**,因为动词是主要元素,先出来会比较清楚。

#### 9.7.2 S+V+C

He kept quiet resolutely.
 他坚定地保持沉默。

补语 quiet 是主要元素, 要先出来, 所以修饰动词的副词 resolutely 就被挤到后面去了。 请注意, 如果不这样处理, 而把 resolutely 放在前面, 成为:

• He kept resolutely quiet.

这就会造成语意不清。因为副词也可以修饰形容词,读者会以为 resolutely 是修饰 quiet 的修饰语, "坚定的沉默"。而同一句话有两种可能的解释,在修辞上就犯了模棱两可 (ambiguous) 的毛病。这种错误在写作时要避免。有一种可以接受的位置是:

• He resolutely kept quiet.

副词如果放在句尾,与动词之间会受到补语 quiet 的阻隔,这时就可以把副词挪到动词前面以维持它和动词的接近。而且 resolutely 放在 kept 的前面,并不会产生模棱两可的毛病,所以是正确的位置。

#### 9.7.3 S+V+O

He kissed the girl on tenderly.
 他温柔地吻了那个女孩。

有宾语的句型, 道理和有补语的句型一样, 方法、状态的副词都会被挤到后面的位置。因而 tenderly 要放在 the girl 的后面。请注意下面的变化:

He passionately (adv.)
 他热情地吻了那个住隔壁的女孩。

这个例子中,因为有一个简化的关系从句或称非限定从句(以后会加以说明) living next door 跟在宾语后面,假如副词 passionately 再往后挪,不但与它所修饰的动词 kissed 距离太远,而且会有模棱两可的情形出现:

He kissed the girl living next door passionately.

这样处理的话,读者可能会认为 passionately 是修饰 living,"热情地生活在隔壁"。因为现在分词 living 原本是动词 live,而且副词 passionately 又和 living 比较接近。这就必然会引起误解。如果把 passionately 放在宾语 the girl 后面呢?

• He kissed the girl passionately living next door.

还是不通! 因为 passionately 紧临 living,仍然会产生误解。这时,唯一的选择就是把 passionately 放在动词 kissed 的前面,才可以免除任何误解。

### 9.7.4 S+V+O+O

He showed v O O O (adv.)
 他很不情愿地把文件拿给我们看。

9.8 频率副词 113

同样的,因为两个宾语都是主要元素,修饰语类的 reluctantly 就被挤到后面去了。 当然,挪到动词前面也是一个办法,如:

副词 willingly 放到句尾时会受到两个宾语 you 与 my help 的阻隔,就有足够的理由可以向前挪到动词 offer 前面的位置,使它与动词没有距离。

#### 9.7.5 S+V+O+C

● They elected him chairman unanimously.

▼ V O C (adv.)

因为有宾语和补语这两个重要元素存在,副词 unanimously 就要退让到后面。当然这会使它和动词 elected 之间产生**距离**,所以也有另外一个选择:

I happily pronounce you man and wife.
 I day.)
 V O
 X 很高兴宣布你们结为夫妇。

这是牧师、神父证婚时必说的一句话。此言一出,男女双方的婚姻于焉生效。读者大概不曾听过把这句话的 happily 放在后面的吧?

• I pronounce you man and wife happily.

这句话这样讲就感觉十分不对劲,原因何在?不是语法的问题。副词 happily 被宾语与补语挤到句尾去,这是语法正确的句型,可是修辞不佳。第一,happily 要和 pronounce 相连,才足以表达那种欣喜的口吻。距离太远,语气就太冷淡了。第二,全场宾客都在听的是 man and wife 这几个字,新郎新娘也在听这几个代表终身大事底定的字眼,好进行拥吻。所以,man and wife 一定要放在句尾压轴的位置,那么 happily 就只好往前挪了。

以上谈的是修饰动词专用的"方法、状态副词",以及它在句中位置的变化原则。接下来看看其他种类的副词。

## 9.8 频率副词

always, frequently, usually, often, seldom, hardly, never 等是**修饰动作专用的频率副词**,一般紧紧围绕被修饰动词前后。但因其只能修饰动作,就算放在句首或句末也不容易发生混淆,因此位置比较有弹性。

114 第九章 副词

- I **usually get up** very early.
- His joke <u>are often</u> not funny at all.

# 9.9 强调语气的副词(Intensifiers)

这一类副词有一个特色:它在使用上很有弹性,四种主要词类,包括名词、动词、形容词与副词都可以用它来修饰。认识这一点,才算真正弄清楚形容词与副词间的分工。这一类的副词又可以细分为以下三种:

### 9.9.1 强调范围的副词(Focusing Adverbs)

这一类的副词不多, 典型的像 only, merely, also, especially, particularly, even 等字就是这一类。它的功能在于清楚界定出所谈事物的范围,好比照相机对焦(focusing)的动作一般。它的**位置要求很严格,有些要放在所修饰对象的前面,有些则要放在后面,但都不能和修饰的对象有任何距离**。因为它可以修饰任何词类,只要位置一变动,意思也就跟着发生变化。以下举 only 为例说明:

- I heard about the accident yesterday. 我昨天听说了这件意外。
- Only I heard about the accident yesterday. (No one else did.) 只有我是昨天听说这件意外的。
- <u>I only</u> heard about the accident yesterday. (I didn't it.)
   我昨天只是听说了这件意外。
- I heard about <u>only the accident</u> yesterday. (I didn't hear anything else.) 昨天只听人讲起这件意外。
- I heard about the accident <u>only yesterday</u>. (I didn't hear about it earlier.) 我直到昨天才听说这件意外。

这几个例子中, only 分别修饰代词 I、动词 heard、名词 the accident 与副词 yesterday, 意思不同,可是都一样是当副词使用。

### 9.9.2 加强语气的副词(INTENSIFIERS)

这是最典型的 Intensifiers。它的位置通常要放在修饰对象的前面。例子:

- He is very much (adv.)
   他和他爸一个调调

  his father's son.

   (n.)
- You're <u>utterly</u> <u>insane!</u> 你是完全全疯了。
- I <u>badly</u> <u>need</u> a drink. (adv.) (v.) 我亟需喝一杯。

# 9.9.3 程度副词(Adverbs of Degree)

这一类副词和加强语气的副词很像,但是**程度副词**是用来做"**有几成**"的表示,**而非加强语气**。所以,如果把加强语气的副词去掉,只是语气变弱,意思不会变。但是如果拿掉程度副词,意思则可能会发生改变,如:

The project is <u>almost</u> finished.
 计划已经差不多完成了。

这个句子中的 almost 就是程度副词,表示"八九成,还不到十足"的程度,并非加强语气。如果把它拿掉,就变成:

The project is finished.
 计划已经完成。

这个意思就和原文不同了。程度副词和另外两类的 Intensifiers 一样,也是四大词类都可以修饰,它的位置通常也是要放在修饰面。例如:

- You can buy practically (adv.) anything at a mall.
   在购物中心几乎什么都买得到。
- I <u>can</u> <u>hardly</u> <u>hear</u> you. (adv.) <u>(v.)</u> 我快听不到你在说什么了。
- The promotion was moderately (adv.)
   促销活动还算成功。
- I know your father rather well. (adv.) (adv.) 我跟你父亲还算蛮熟的。

# 9.10 修饰句子的副词(Sentence Modifiers)

这又可以分成两类: **连接副词和分离副词**。这两类副词的位置,通常是放在句首,可是也可以挪到主语、动词中间,甚至放到句尾位置。不论放在何种位置,都需要有**逗号**把它和句子隔开来。这其中的原因我们分别来探讨一下。

### 9.10.1 连接副词(Conjuncts)

这一类的副词很像连接词(Conjunctions),有类似对等连接词 and 的(如 besides、furthermore),以及类似 but 的(如 however、nevertheless)等等。它可以连接两句话间的逻辑关系,可是缺乏连接词的语法功能,所以要用**标点**来帮忙。它的变化很简单、请大家从例句中自行观察:

- Vivian Leigh is brilliant.
   费雯丽光芒四射。
- Clark Gable, however, is lousy.
   (adv.)
   克拉克·盖博却很糟。
- Therefore, the film is less than perfect.

   (adv.)
   影片因而而不够完美。
- It is still a good movie; besides, good romances are rare these days. (adv.) 这仍是部好片子,况且近来好的爱情片不多了。

### 9.10.2 分离副词(Disjuncts)

把它归于修副词类是方便的分法。严格说起该是属于修饰另一句话的方法、状态副词。请看例句:

<u>Scientifically</u>, the experiment was a success.

(adv.)

从科学的角度来说,这个实验成功了。

固然 scientifically 可以说是修饰全句,可是深入一点来看,这个句子是下面这句的省略:

• <u>Scientifically</u> speaking, the experiment was a success. (adv.)

这个副词其实是修饰动词 speaking 方法状态副词。更进一步把简化成下面的原貌:

• If we are speaking  $\frac{\text{Scientifically}}{(\text{adv.})}$ , the experiment was a success.

这个例子可以看出来,原来有两句话。第一句被简化成只剩一个方法、状态副词 scientifically,修饰"怎么说",再附在第二句上。看到这个地步,就不难了解为什么这个副词要有逗点隔开了——原来那是两个从句之间的逗号! 分离副词也可以调到中间的位置以及句尾可是仍然要有逗号隔开。请比较下面的例子:

- You're not <u>answering</u> my questions <u>honestly</u>.
   你并没有老实回答我。
- <u>Honestly</u>, what are you going to do about it? 老实说,你打算如何处置呢?

第一句的 honestly 是单纯的方法、状态副词,修饰动词 answer。第二句的 honestly 则是分离副词,原本是 honestly speaking(老实说)。它是简化从句的残余,可以为方便起见归于修饰全句的副词类。

# 第十章 状语的语义和语法

# 10.1 状语按语义分类

状语按语义可分为以下几类(也是状语的作用)

1. 空间

位置 The dog was asleep on the grass.

方向 They walked down the hill.

目标 She hurried to the station.

来源 This book cannot be taken from the library.

距离 We mustn't go very much further.

2. 时间

固定时间位置 She was born in 1980.

前跨延续 I shall be in Chicago until Thursday.

以"现在时间"为基点,向前跨越。

后跨延续 We have been at the airport since yesterday.

以"现在时间"为基点,向前跨越。或者说从过去某时间点到现在。

时间频度 They <u>very seldom</u> went to see their parents.

一个时间和另一个时间的关系 She must <u>still</u> be in her office.

3. 方式过程

方式 The minister explained his policy very clearly.

手段 **By her insight**, she grasped the patient's real problem.

工具 I have difficulty eating with chopsticks.

施事 Penicillin was discovered by Sir Alexander Fleming.

4. 方面, 用状语增加具体真实价值。

- She helped him with his research.
   她帮助他做研究。
- He's busy writing.
  - 5. 原因原因、理由、目的其实可以归为一种

原因 She died of cancer.

理由 He bought the book through an interest in China.

目的 He bought the book to study English.

结果 He always studies hard, so he has good grades.

条件 If he always studies hard, he will have good grades.

让步 Even though he studied hard, he didn't have good grades.

6. 情态,可以使用状语来改变句子的真实性(如增强或减弱)。

强调 She **certainly** helped him with his research.

近似 They are **probably** going to the zoo.

限制 I shall be in Chicago only until Thursday.

7. 程度,程度状语在改变句子的真实性上与情态状语类似,但是,程度状语添加了一个特殊的语义成分,可分等级性。

增强语义 He badly needed consolation.

他急需安慰。badly 在这里是非常, 很, 严重的意思。

减弱语义 She helped him <u>a little</u> with his research.

# 10.2 可构成状语的词类

状语成分可以由很多词类来实现:

封闭类副词为中心词的副词短语 (Just) then, the telephone rang.

以开放类副词为中心词的副词短语 You should have opened it a bit more carefully.

名词短语 They had traveled a very long way.

介词短语 Tom hurried across the field.

无动词从句 When in doubt the answer is "no". doubt, 疑问。

10.3 状语的位置 121

非限定性从句 She realized, lying there, what she must do.

限定性从句 We sent for you because you were absent yesterday.

我们叫你来是因为你昨天缺席了。

### 10.3 状语的位置

与其他句子成分相比, 状语成分可以比较自由地被置于句内各个不同的位置上(简单了解即可):

**I** by then the book should have been returned to the library.

**iM** The book **by then** should have been returned to the library.

**M** The book should by then have been returned to the library.

**mM** The book should have **by then** been returned to the library.

**eM** The book should have been by then returned to the library.

**iE** The book should have been returned **by then** to the library.

**E** The book should have been returned to the library by then.

如上文中的符号所示,状语可位于句中三个主要位置: 句首位置 I(NITIAL),句中位置 M(EDIAL),句末位置 E(ND),但是,句中位置又分有三个变体(句中首位 iM,句中中位 mM 和句中末位 eM)以及句末位置下分的句末首位 (iE)。**句中位置就是紧接在功能词或系词后面的位置**。

若不存在功能词,那么 M 的位置就简单的处于 S 和 V 之间;若 S 被省略,M 的位置则位于 V 的前面。

状语位置的选择由语义和语法因素来决定,但是同时也由信息处理的要求和末端重 (end weight) 原则来决定。如果没有特殊因素需要考虑,状语应被置于 E (句末位置),事实上,状语多数被置于这个位置。

#### 10.3.1 各类状语位置

连接状语 Connecting adverbials 和评论状语 comment adverbials 多表示本句与 其他句子的关系,或者评价本句,所以通常放在句首:

- <u>However</u>, not everybody agreed.
- Fortunately, nobody was hurt.

# 不定频度状语 (always, often 等), 确定性状语 (probably, definitely 等) 和完整性状语 (completel 通常放在句中。

- My boss often travels to America
- I've **definitely** decided to change my job.
- There is **clearly** something wrong.
- The builder said he had **almost** finished, but it wasn't true.
- **Sometimes** I'd like to live alone somewhere else alone.

# **焦点状语 Focusing adverbials (also, just, even 等)** 可以放在句中或其他位置, 依 具体状语而定。

- He's **even** been to Antarctica.
- We are **only** going for two days.
- <u>Once</u> you could do a thing like that. 只有你才会做出那样的事。

#### 方式、地点和时间状语 通常放在句末:

- She brushed her hair **slowly**.
- The children are playing **upstairs**.
- I phoned Alex this morning.

时间状语也可以放在句首。

• <u>Tomorrow</u> I've got a meeting in Cardiff.

# 强调状语 Emphasizing adverbials (terribly, really 等) 通常与其所强调的词放在一起。

• I'm <u>terribly</u> sorry about last night.

# 程度状语 Degree adverbials (more, very much, most, a lot, so 等) 据其功能变换位置。

多条状语短句 通常按照方式、地点、时间的顺序排列。

• Put the butter <u>in the fridge</u> <u>at once</u>. (not …at once in the fridge.)

10.4 TEST 123

- Let's go to bed early. (not ···early to bed.)
- I worked hard yesterday.
- She sang beautifully in the town hall last night.

### 10.3.2 分裂不定式

分裂不定式 (SPLIT INFINITE) 句中末位状语用在 to 和不定式的助动词之后,主要动词之前。

- He wasn't able to **even** move his fingers.
- She ought to **seriously** consider her position.
- She ought to have <u>seriously</u> considered her position.
   她应该认真考虑下自己的立场。
- Your task is to **really** understand your students' problems.
- I do TRY to underSTÁND to TRULY understand.
- No one invited me to <u>so much as</u> have a glass of water. [甚至] 甚至没有人请我喝杯水。

分裂不定式因文体在 200 多年里一直受到一些指责, 但另一些专家认为这是可以接受的。

#### **10.4** Test

练习中有一些无关于观念、纯属辨字的问题,请仔细作答!

请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

1, he would leave his wife at home	and go fishing himself.
(A) More often than not	(B) Oftener than can't
(C) More often than doesn't	(D) Oftener than doesn't
2. Separated for years, father and son for	ound
(A) each other greatly changed	(B) one another greatly changed
(C) one another great changed	(D) one greatly changed another
3. He speaks English as he does Chi	nese.

	<ul><li>(A) as fluently</li><li>(C) more fluently</li></ul>	<ul><li>(B) as fluent</li><li>(D) so fluent</li></ul>
4	•	
4. me.	I don't like detective stories, but science	e fiction makes impression on
iiie.	<ul><li>(A) quite a different</li><li>(C) a quite differently</li></ul>	<ul><li>(B) a quitely different</li><li>(D) quitely a differently</li></ul>
5.	I am sorry. I forgot it.  (A) clean  (C) cleanness	<ul><li>(B) cleanly</li><li>(D) cleanfully</li></ul>
6.	After walking so long a distance, I am _ (A) dead (C) death	_ tired.  (B) deadly  (D) died
7.	We are told to keep of the puddle of (A) clear (C) clearly	water.  (B) clean  (D) cleanly
8.	Dick went  (A) late yesterday there  (C) yesterday late there	<ul><li>(B) there late yesterday</li><li>(D) yesterday there late</li></ul>
9.	I like to be alone.  (A) Some time  (C) Sometime	<ul><li>(B) Some times</li><li>(D) Sometimes</li></ul>
10.	spring, early one Saturday morning, I  (A) Latest  (C) Latter	drove to Taiwan.  (B) Later  (D) Last
11.	Both writing and rewriting are essen (A) careful (C) carefully	tial, if you want to make a hit.  (B) carefulness  (D) carelessly
12.	The computer plays an important rol (A) increasing (C) increased	e in modern life.  (B) increasely  (D) increasingly
13.	He exclaimed, " kind man before!"  (A) Never I met with such	(B) I never meet with such

10.5 ANSWER 125

(C) Never I've met with a such	(D) Never have I met with such
	a
14. "The workers in that factory are treated	very badly." "Yes, they are than
slaves."	
(A) the little better	(B) little better
(C) less better	(D) a small better
15. "Is John very intelligent?" "Yes, than	n his brother,"
(A) so much	(B) so more
(C) much so	(D) much more so
16. The more we looked at the abstract pair	nting,
(A) the more we liked it	(B) we liked it more
(C) better we liked it	(D) it looked better
17. The girl was disappointed at how sr	mall the flower was.
(A) noticeable	(B) noticed
(C) noticeably	(D) noticing
18. With the computer down, we our w	ork.
(A) not longer would continue	(B) not longer could continue
(C) could continue no longer	(D) could no longer continue
19. He threw the javelin than all the oth	ners.
(A) farther	(B) as far
(C) further	(D) farthest
20. The enemy is advancing. Stand	
(A) firm	(B) firmly
(C) firmness	(D) to firm

## 10.5 Answer

- 1. (A) 动词部分有助动词 would, 所以前面不能用助动词 doesn't (如 C 和 D)。又, more often than not 是一个常用短语,表示"经常"。
- 2. (A) 因是父子两人,故应用 each other。三人以上方能用 one another(如 B, C 和 D)。答案 A 中,each other 是 found 的宾语,greatly changed 是宾语补语。
  - 3. (A) 后面有比较级连接词 as, 所以前面只能用 as (A 或 B)。空格位置应用副词

fluently 修饰动词 speaks,故选 A。D 的 so 一般用在否定句,例如 not so fluently 就可以配合后面的 as,作正确的答案。

- 4. (A) quite 是个强调语气的副词,可直接修饰名词短语 a different impression,故选 A。而 C 和 D 用了副词 differently,置于名词 impression 之前,词类错误。B 中的 quitely 错误,因为没有这种拼法。
- 5. (A) clean 作形容词是"干净的",作副词时则是"完完全全"。在此用副词用法来修饰动词 forgot。
- 6. (A) dead tired 这个短语相当于"累得要死",又 dead center 表示"正中红心",在这两个短语中 dead 都当作强调语气的副词,不是形容词。
  - 7. (A) keep clear of 意思是"避开,保持距离",其中 clear 当 away 解释。
- 8. (B) 地方副词 there 在先,时间副词 yesterday 在后,这是一般的顺序。修饰 yesterday 的副词 late 置于它的前面。
- 9. (D) 这个位置要求频率副词 (如 D, 有时候)。A 的 some time 表示"一段时间",是名词短语,如: I spent some time in the U.S.。B 的 some times 表示"某些时代"或是"若干次"。C 的 sometime 是个形容词,表示"从前的",如 a sometime friend 是"从前的朋友",当副词用时 sometime 表示"不特定的时间",如 I'll be back sometime。
- 10. (D) A和B的最高级与比较级在上下文都没有呼应, C的 latter 表示"后者", 上文应有"两者"时才能使用。
- 11. (C) 空格位置在 writing and rewriting 之后,应用副词类(C 或 D)修饰其中的动词部分。放在前面才能用形容词(如 careful writing and rewriting)。再看句意,应选肯定语气的 C。
- 12. (D) 这个位置是修饰形容词 important 的位置,应用副词(只有 D, 而 B 是错误拼法)。
- 13. (D) 句尾的 before 暗示应用现在完成时最好(C 或 D),而 never 移至句首时应用倒装句,故选 D。
- 14. (B) little 是否定的语气,所以 they are little better than slaves 既表示"比奴隶好不了多少",在此 little 作副词来修饰比较级的形容词 better。当然,只有形容词没有名词,就不应加冠词(如 A 和 D),而 C 的 less 本身是比较级,与 better 重复了。
- 15. (D) 回答是 He is much more intelligent than his brother. 其中用 much 来加强比较级 more intelligent。又,简答句中可以把重复的 He is intelligent 省略,只用 so 取代,即成 D。

10.5 ANSWER 127

16. (A) 这是双重比较结构(double comparison),以 the more…the more 之类的结构置于句首来取代连接词,表达"成正比"的关系,故选 A。

- 17. (C) 这个位置是副词位置,修饰 disappointed,只有 C 是副词。
- 18. (D) no longer 表示"不再",作时间副词用,又有否定句功能,应与助动词 could 置于一起。
- 19.  $(A ext{ of } C)$  由下文 than 可看出是比较级, $A ext{ of } C$  都可以,但在表示距离时更多用 farther。另外 further 可以额外表示"程度更深,更进一步"。
- 20. (A) stand firm 可作 you must stand firm 看待,这个 firm 是主语补语,应用形容词,修饰主语 you,意为"你们得保持坚定",也就是"不要怕"。如果用副词 firmly,只能修饰动词 stand,意为"两条腿出点力气站稳",与上文不大相配。

## 第十一章 语气

语气(Moods)是利用动词变化来表达"真、假"口吻的方式。依各种不同程度的"真、假"口吻,可以细分为四种语气:

叙述事实语气 (Indicative) 表示所说的是真的。

条件语气 (Conditional) 表示真假还不能确定。

虚拟语气 (Subjunctive) 说反话,表示所说的与事实相反;或者表示现在时命令性语气,与间接祈式语气重合。

祈使语气 (Imperative) 表示希望能成真, 但尚未实现。

四种不同的语气,看起来好像很复杂,不过各有各的重点,只要能掌握重点,便不难区分,也不需死背。

### 11.1 叙述事实语气

一般的英语句子都是这种语气,读者过去所学以及本书前面内容绝大部分都是叙述事实语气,所以不必多作解释。

只是将来时有一个变化需要注意。请看下面的例子:

• I'<u>ll be</u> ready when he <u>comes</u>. 他来的时候我会有万全的准备。

同时叙述到两件未来的事情,而两者之间有时间或条件的关联性时,往往其中一件(副词从句中的那件——何谓状语从句,将来会再作说明)要改成现在式。这是因为两件未来的事情都不确定,需要先假定其中一件是事实,已经发生,在这个确定的基础上,才能推论另一件事。上例中的 when he comes 就是假定"他来"是确定的,用表示确定语气的现在式 comes 来叙述,然后才能那候我(I'll be ready)"一个例子的:

If you <u>are</u> late again, you<u>'ll be</u> fired.
 你再迟到就会被炒鱿鱼。

这是警告对方不得再迟到。下一次如果又迟到,这当然是未来的时间,**这件事是可以做成的,不应用假设语句。而应用叙述事实的语句,从而不适合用助动词**,所以要改成 If you are late 来表示。语法书中列出规则"表示时间或条件的状语从句要用现在式代替将来时",原因即在此。

### 11.2 条件语气

句子中一旦加上情态助动词(如:must、should、will/would、can/could、may/might等),就产生了不确定的语气,称为条件语气。例如:

- 1. You are right. 你是对的。
- 2. You may be right. 你可能是对的。

例 1 中是以现在式来叙述事实的语气。例 2 中因为加上了助动词 may, 就产生了不确定性("可能对"表示不一定对)。

情态助动词有以下两点需要注意:

#### 11.2.1 表达时间的功能不完整

情态助动词中,must 和 should 这两个词在拼法上没有变化。至于 will/would、can/could、may/might 这三对,虽然拼法有变化,可是并不表示时间,而是语气的变化:每一对的后者比前者更不确定。例如:

- 1. The doctor thinks it <u>can be</u> AIDS. 医生认为可能是艾滋病。
- 2. It <u>could be</u> anything—AIDS or a common cold. 还看不出来是什么病——可能是艾滋病,也可能是感冒。

例 1 中的 can be 是不确定语气,表示很有这个可能,但还不一定。例 2 中的 could be 并不表示过去式,两句话的时间一样,都是现在时间,差别在于 could 表示更不确定的语气。

情态助动词,不论是 must 这一类,还是 can/could 这一类,都无法明确表达过去式。助动词后面要用不带 to 的不定式,同样缺乏时间变化,所以情态助动词要寻找一种特别的方式来表达过去时间。

11.3 虚拟语气 131

#### 11.2.2 用完成式表达对过去的猜测

情态助动词用来猜测过去的事情时,因为缺乏表达过去时间的能力,所以要借助**完** 成式表达。例如:

1. It <u>may rain</u> any minute now. 随时可能会下雨。

2. It may have rained a little last night.

昨晚可能下过一点雨。

例 1 是对现在、未来的猜测。如果要对过去(last night)做猜测,改成 might rain 并没有用,因为 might 只表示更没把握的语气,并不是过去式。只有借助完成式 may have rained(可能下过),才能表达对过去的猜测。

## 11.3 虚拟语气

关于虚拟语气划分,存在多种争议,详情可看《薄冰语法》。语法的争议再正常不过,但我们要则一用之,且使其自洽。

本节采用夸克及 Bas Aarts 的语法描述方法。将虚拟语气分为两种形式,**现在时虚 拟式和过去时虚拟式**,但是使用这种说法与其说和**时态**有关,不如说和**语气**有关。

国内部分语法描述多将下一节讲述的假设从句(见下一节11.4节)也列入虚拟语气,本笔记也是沿用夸克表述,不采用这种看法。读者届时注意即好。

#### 11.3.1 现在时虚拟语气

现在时虚拟语气和祈使语气一样,使用**动词原形**。因此,除 **Be** (虚拟形式 be 和陈 述形式 am, is 和 are 是有区别的) 以外,**其他动词的虚拟语气形式只有在第三人称单数 时才与陈述语气有区别**。

- I insist that we <u>reconsider</u> the Council's decisions. [陈述语气或虚拟语气,均可]
- I insist that the Council <u>reconsider</u> its decisions. [第三人称单数未加 -s, 使用动词原形,虚拟语气]
- I insist that the Council's decision(s) <u>be</u> reconsidered. [动词原形 be,虚拟语气]

现在时虚拟语气可以分为两种,命令性和古老的套语式虚拟语气:

命令性 (MANDATIVE) 从句谓语使用动词原形,用在 that 从句中。that 从句由一个表示要求、推荐、建议、决定、意图等的先行词引导。这个词可以是动词、形容词或名词。命令性虚拟语气也用在间接祈使句中,与祈使语气有所重叠。

命令性虚拟语气常用先行引导词有:

动词 decide, demands, insist, move, order, prefer, request 等。

形容词 advisable, desirable, fitting, imperative, essential 等。

名词 decision, decree, order, requirement, resolution 等。

除本小节开头的例句外, 还有:

- It is necessary that ... [有必要 ... ...)
- It's <u>essential</u> that this mission <u>not fail</u>. [动词的否定形式不加助动词 do, 直接加入否定词 not, 虚拟语气]
- It's **important** that she **be** on time. [动词原形,未用 is,虚拟语气]
- (Even) if that **be** the official view, it can't be accepted.
- The court <u>demands</u> that the witness <u>leave</u> the courtroom.
- **套语式 (FORMULAIC)** 在传统和正式用法中使用的**固定短语**,这些短语使用虚拟语气来表达**特定的愿望、祝福或要求**。虽然在现代口语中可能不常见,但它们在**特定的正式和仪式性场合**中仍然发挥着重要作用。简单举例,不需多了解:
  - Long <u>live</u> the King. God <u>save</u> the Queen.
  - May you succeed.
  - Long may the sunshine.
  - **Be that as it may**, we have nothing to lose. 尽管如此,我们没有什么可输的了。

#### 11.3.2 过去时虚拟语气

过去时 WERE-虚拟式 (WERE-SUBJUNCTIVE) 简称为 WERE-虚拟语气,使用 were 表示"不是事实"的虚拟语气。

由定义可知,不带 be 动词的句子无法成为过去时虚拟式,从而在 WERE 虚拟语气中只有第一人称和第三人称的单数形式才与陈述语气的形式不同,如 if/as I/she/he/it were ...,且只能用在从句中。

11.4 假设条件从句 133

例如:

• If I/he/she <u>were</u> leaving, you would have heard about it. [不用 was,虚拟语气]

如果他/她正要离开,你会听到这个消息。(非事实的虚拟假设,他/她没有离开。)

• If I were you, I wouldn't do it.

如果我是你,我不会做这件事情。

这句话选择用非事实的虚拟语气来说,是为了以缓和委婉的口吻劝对方不做事。当然,我不可能是你,所以不用叙述事实的语气 I am you 来表达。

- If she were trying harder, her parents wouldn't be so anxious. 指现在: but she don't try harder now.
- If I <u>were to take</u> the bribe, I <u>would never look at</u> other people in the eye again.

我要是收下那笔贿款,就再也不能面对别人而问心无愧了。(我并没有收下)

连带在领句中也用过去形态但不代表过去时间的 would 来表示非事实,而成为 wouldn't do 的动词形态。

## 11.4 假设条件从句

如果不支持本笔记这样划分的话,大可将假设条件从句也归入虚拟语气。

假设条件从句中的动词是时态后移的,过去时形式用来指现在和将来时间,过去完成体形式用来指过去时间(见表 11.1 )。当这些形式具有这种非事实的假设含义时,我们把它们称为假设过去时(HYPOTHETICAL PAST)和假设过去完成时(HYPOTHETICAL PAST PERFECTIVE)。

时间假设条件从句对应的领句(主句)现在和将来时间过去时过去时情态助动词过去时间过去完成时过去完成时情态助动词

表 11.1: 假设条件句中的动词时态

**过去时间**的假设意义更加明确,相当于**对条件的隐含否定**;而在指**现在和将来时**,假 设意义可能仅仅表示**否定性的期待或假设**,并不完全排除肯定的可能。 134 第十一章 语气

#### 11.4.1 假设过去时

假设过去时 (the HYPOTHETICAL PAST) 用于某些从句, 尤其是 if 条件从句中, 表示**和讲话人的信念或期待相反**的意思——现在或将来的某种状态、事件并没有出现。

• If she really <u>tried</u> / <u>were to try</u>) harder next time, she <u>would pass</u> the examination.

**指将来:** but I expect she won't try harder. 如果使用 were to try 的话,则是前文所说的过去 WERE 虚拟语气。

• If an asteroid **should hit** the earth, man **could die** out.

指将来: 如果小行星撞击地球, 人类可能会灭绝。

还未成为现实, 且可能性较低。

• If I should take the money, could you guarantee secrecy?

指将来:万一我收下钱、你能保守秘密吗?(我不会收下钱。)

• If they were alive, they would be moving around.

指现在: but I assume they are not alive.

因第二人称与复数人称的 WERE 虚拟语气也是这种句型。因此我们既可当其为虚拟语气,也可当作假设过去时。

#### 11.4.2 假设过去完成时

假设条件从句的领句中最常用的情态助动询是 would, 后接完成式。它用来表示假设的含义,不一定有任何其他情态含义:

• If they <u>had invited</u> him to the conference, he <u>would have attended</u>.

指过去: but they didn't invite him in the past

此外,还有以下例句指示过去:

- If I <u>had known</u> earlier, I <u>might have done</u> something.
- I <u>might have married</u> her if she <u>would have agreed</u>.

她当时没有同意嫁给我。

情态助动词用于假设条件从句中时,和过去时及过去完成时结合在一起。

If they <u>had asked</u> me, I <u>would have had to</u> speak.
 have to 用来代替没有过去形式的 must.

• If I <u>had been</u> at home last night, I <u>should have heard</u> the noise.

11.5 祈使语气 135

#### 11.4.3 混合时间的变化

假设条件从句和其领句之间,时间可能不同,要分别判断。例如:

• If I had studied harder in school, I could qualify for the job now. 我在学校时要是好好念书,现在就可以符合这项工作的要求了。 假设从句是过去时间(在学校时)的假设,领句是现在时间(now)。

#### 11.4.4 一假设、一陈述句

有的句子混合了假设条件句和陈述句:假设句为假设,用假设条件语法;另一陈述句为事实、非假设,用普通语法,不要生搬硬套。例如:

• I <u>could have contributed</u> to the fund drive then, only that <u>I didn't have</u> any money with me.

我本可以响应捐款活动的,不过当时身上没带钱。 前句为假设,后句为陈述事实。

以下例句前句为陈述事实, 后为假设条件。

- It's time we all took a rest. [NOT was]
- I wish I had a memory like yours. [NOT wished]
- I wish this bus went to the university. [NOT wished]
- If only I had more time!

## 11.5 祈使语气

**使用祈使语气的句子又称为祈使句、命令句**。是一种表达命令、请求、建议或劝告的句子结构。它通常**以动词原形开头,一般省略主语,直接对听者发出指令**。例如:

- Open the door!
- Don't make a noise!
- Let's not discuss it now!
   有一种命令句添加重读的 you, 代表恼怒等强烈感情, 往往有训斥意味:
- 'You be QUÌET!
- 'You 'show me what to DÒ!
- Don't tell MÊ to be quiet, YÒU be quiet!

## **11.6** Test

## 请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

1. The landlord demanded that he the	rent by tomorrow.
(A) pays	(B) pay
(C) paid	(D) has paid
2. If you with her last night, there w	ouldn't be any misunderstanding
between you now.	
(A) talked	(B) were talking
(C) could talk	(D) had talked
3 to participate, I might have won First	Place.
(A) Had had the chance	(B) I had had the chance
(C) The chance had I had	(D) Had I had the chance
4. That was a close call; you hit by the	car.
(A) could have been	(B) can have been
(C) could be	(D) can be
5. If you had asked him, he the truth.	
(A) might tell	(B) would tell
(C) might have told	(D) had told
6. They suggested that he it alone.	
(A) does	(B) do
(C) will do	(D) has done
7 him, I would have spoken to him.	
(A) Had I known	(B) If I should have known
(C) If I know	(D) If I had been known
8. I wish I there yesterday.	
(A) was	(B) were
(C) had been	(D) could be
9. He would have made the speech, only t	hat he a sore throat.
(A) has	(B) had
(C) had had	(D) has had

11.6 TEST 137

10. Even if he here, he couldn't have he	lped you.	
(A) has been	(B) had been	
(C) was	(D) were	
11 you were coming, I would have got	the contract prepared.	
(A) Had I known	(B) If I knew	
(C) If I know	(D) Should I know	
12. If he should leave, everything would gethat has the same meaning as the above)  (A) He is going to leave, but there is	•	
(B) Fortunately he's not leaving, for	everything depends on him.	
(C) Things will take a turn for the w	orse, and then he will leave.	
(D) I hope he won't leave, but I'm afrastay.	aid he has too much to do and can't	
13. The boss demanded that all the letters	without delay by seven tonight.	
(A) were typewritten	(B) be typewritten	
(C) would be typewritten	(D) typewriting	
<ul><li>14. Choose the wrong sentence:</li><li>(A) They didn't stop to rest at each statem down.</li></ul>	ation because it would have slowed	
(B) It would have slowed them down to stop to rest at each station.		
(C) Much as they would like to stop to rest at each station, they thought better of it.		
(D) It was essential that they stopped better of it.	to rest at each station, they thought	
15. If you don't finish this assignment on t	ime, they you.	
(A) wouldn't have paid	(B) had not paid	
(C) won't pay	(D) didn't pay	
16. I'll let you know the results when they		
(A) come out	(B) will come out	
(C) came out	(D) would have come out	
17. I'm not worried about security because	I think he	
(A) dares not tell	(B) dares not to tell	
(C) doesn't dare tell	(D) doesn't dare to tell	

18. This door ought to \_\_ a week ago.

(A) have fixed

(B) be fixed

(C) get fixed

(D) have been fixed

19. I am surprised that you \_\_ so indiscreetly.

(A) act

(B) should be acted

(C) should have acted

(D) could have been acted

20. He said he \_\_ disgrace.

(A) would rather die than suffer

(B) chose death to

(C) would prefer death before

(D) would die rather than

#### 11.7 Answer

- 1. (B) 现在时命令性虚拟语气,用动词原形。
- 2. (D) 这是过去时间(last night)的非事实,为过去时间假设语句,应用假设条件过去完成时,故选 D。
- 3. (D) 从下文 might have won 可看出这也是过去时间假设条件,应用假设条件过去完成时: If I had had the chance to participate ... **省略掉连接词 If 时需倒装**,故选 D。
- 4. (A) 从上句 was 得知是过去时间(a close call 意为千钧一发),后面的假设语句是过去时间,应用过去完成时情态助动词,故选 A。
- 5. (C) 从 had asked 可看出时间在过去,为过去时间假设语句,应用过去完成时情态助动词,故选 C。
  - 6. (B) 从上下文可看出这是现在时命令性虚拟语气,应用动词原形,故选 B。
- 7. (A) 从 would have spoken 可看出是过去时间假设语句,故应用过去完成时,即 If I had known him,省略 If 后要倒装,即是 A。
- 8. (C) wish 表示这是非事实的愿望,要用假设语句或虚拟语气(两者相同)。时间 yesterday 是过去,应用假设过去完成时,故选 C。
- 9. (B) 从 would have made 来看是过去时间的假设语句(本来当时可以演说的)。 然而**下文的 only that (不过) 把语气反了过来,成为事实语气,所以要用简单过去式 B** (he had a sore throat, 他当时喉咙痛,这是事实,不用假设。过去时间就是过去式)。
  - 10. (B) 从 even if 和 couldn't have helped 可看出这又是过去时间的假设语句,应

11.7 ANSWER 139

用过去完成时, 故选 B。

11. (A) 由下文 would have got 可看出是过去时间假设语句,故应用过去完成时 If I had known,再省去 If 用倒装句,即是 A。

- 12. (B) 原句意为 "万一他要走了,一切都会完蛋。"因为主句从句都有过去时情态助动词,所以是假设语句,表示他要走的可能性很小,这和 B 的语气近似(还好他不走,因为全靠他了。)A 是 "他会走,不过也不用怕。" C 是 "事情会恶化,然后他才会一走了之。" D 是 "我希望他不走,但恐怕他事情真的太多,不能留下来。"
  - 13. (B) 由 demanded that 可看出这是现在时命令性虚拟语气,应用动词原形。
- 14. (D) A 中的 they didn't stop 是事实语气, it would have slowed them down (停的话会太慢)是假设语句。B 和 A 类似,只不过把停下改成不定式。C 的 much as they would like 表示 although they would like very much, 而 they thought better of it 是"他们打消了那个念头"。D 的句型表示这是间接祈使句,可是动词却用 stopped,不是动词原形 stop, 因而错误。
- 15. (C) 由上文 If you don't finish 可看出, **不是假设语句, 而是普通条件语句, 还有可能赶得完**, 用现在式来表示未来的可能情况, 故下文要用将来时。
- 16. (A) 与上题相同,从 I'll let you know 可看出并非假设语句,所以要用现在式来表示未来可能的情况。
- 17. (D) dare 可作助动词,不过当助动词就不能加-s,后面要接动词原形,例如 He dare not tell。这个词也可以作普通动词,不过当普通动词就不能直接加 not 作否定句,后面也不能再用动词原形,而应该如 He doesn't dare to tell。
- 18. (D) 时间 a week ago 是过去,而情态助动词 ought to 要表示相对的过去时间得用完成体来表示,故由 A 和 D 来选择。主词是 door, 动词是 fix,应用被动态,故选 D。
- 19. (C) "你竟然做出如此草率的举动,真让我想不到。"这是说事情已经做了! 同样的,助动词后面要加完成体来表示相对的过去时间,所以用 C (这句要用主动态)。
- 20. (A) rather than 就是一个比较级, than 是连接词, 前后连接的部分要对称。如放在 would 之后, 就会连接两个动词原形, 故排除 D。答案 C 应为 would prefer death to (disgrace), 答案 B 应为 would choose death over (disgrace), 都是介词用错。

## 第十二章 介词

在英语语法中,介词可以说是最简单、也可以说是最难的东西。说它简单,是因为它没有什么观念可言,不像时态、语气、句型等,要求系统性的理解,所以在介词的部分,不会有"不懂"的问题。然而介词之难,也就难在它缺乏观念性,不能以一套观念来涵盖所有介词的用法。英语中的介词虽然没有多少个,可是在短语中的用法却变化多端。就算有多年英语写作经验的人,也可能用错。所以我们可以这样说:介词的用法,比较接近单词、短语的问题,而不大属于语法的问题。

要想彻底了解介词的用法,**最确实的方法**是经由**泛读**来解决:培养阅读的习惯,快速、大量、持续地阅读英语作品。只要看过各种介词的用法,阅读过无数的例子,假以时日,就会形成一些"感觉"。拿起笔来写英语,自然可判断在哪个句子中该用哪个介词。其实不仅介词如此,单词与语法句型的问题也都应该配合泛读来吸收大量的、反复的 input,才能真正解决。

### 12.1 介词短语

所谓"介词短语",就是由**介词加上一个名词短语所构成的意义单元**,在句中常被当做修饰语(形容词短语或副词用来修饰名词、动词与副词类。它的位置通常在修饰对象后面。例如:

- Eggs <u>are sold</u> <u>by the dozen.</u>对词 介词短语鸡蛋是论打出售的。
- The box is full of chocolates.
   形容词 介词短语
   盒子里装满了巧克力。
- He'll return tomorrow at the latest. 介词短语

他最晚明天回来。

## 12.2 介词补语

介词表达两个实体之间的关系,其中一个实体以介词补足语为代表。 介词补足语通常都是名词性短语(含名词短语、代词、-ing 从句、wh-名词性从句)。 介词短语本身也可以用作介词补足语,如:

- We didn't meet until after the show.
- The weather has been fine **except in the north**.

尽管 that 从句和不定式从句可以起名词作用, 但是它们不能作介词补语。人称主格 I, you 等也不能。

• I was surprised  $\begin{cases} \frac{at}{at} \end{cases}$ 

<u>at</u> her angry response.<u>at</u> hearing her objecti on.

at what she said.
to hear her objection.
that she responded so angrily.

## 12.3 介词、连接词和动词

介词和连接词都具有关联或连接功能, 试比较:

- The day <u>when</u> she arrived. [连接词]
- The day <u>of</u> her arrival. [介词]

某些情况下,同一词项既可以作介词又可以作连接词,如 after, as, before, since, until.

• the day {before she arrived[连接词] before her arrival[介词]

辨别这两个词类的一个标准是:介词引导的是**名词性或名词化补足语**;而与之对应的连接词(从属连词)引导的是一个**从句**。

 后接结构	when 连接词	after 连接词或介词	by 介词
限定从句	when she spoke	after she spoke	by/\$h\\\epsilon\\
非限定从句	when speaking	after speaking	by speaking
名词短语	when/her/speah	after her speech	by her speech

表 12.1: 介词和连接词后面的结构

## 12.4 分词作边缘性介词、非限定动词或连接词

有些分词(-ing 和 -ed)从句形式就可以有边缘介词 (marginal preposition)、非限定动词形式的功能,又可以有连接词的功能,如 considering 和 given.

分词作介词 接名词性(化)短语

- <u>Considering his age</u>, he has made excellent progress in his studies. [等同于 If one considers his age ...或 In view of his age ...]
- Given the present conditions, I think she's done rather well.

[等同于 If one takes into account ... take into account 是习语 idiom: 考虑到、顾及到]

分词作非限定性动词 非限定性从句

- Considering the conditions in the office, she thought
- 分词作连接词 Considering (that) he is rather young, his parents have advised him not to apply.
  - Given (that) the weather is expected to be sunny tomorrow, we should plan a picnic.

其他可作连接词的现在分词形式还有 seeing (that) 和 provided (that) 等(连接词表详见 17.4 节)。

## 12.5 介词后置

介词一般在它本身补足语的前面。但是,在一些情况下介词必须后置:

- 介词动词的被动语态结构,其中主语相当于主动语态里的介词补语:
- The car has been paid for.
- 介词补足语主位化的不定式从句或 -ing 从句:
- That man is unpleasant to work with.
   It's unpleasant to work with that man. 的变形。
- His advice is not worth <u>listening to</u>.
   It's not worth <u>listening to his advice</u>. 的变形。

因上, 当疑问词或引导词是介词补足语时, 介词往往出现在句尾, 尤其是非正式用 法中。 144 第十二章 介词

- What are you looking for?
- Who is she talking about?
- What kind of films are you interested in?
- **About whom** is she talking? 太正式,日常不大用。
- Tell me **what** you're worried **about**.
- **About whom** is she talking? [太正式,日常不大用]
- 一些简单介词(如 through)和多数的复杂介词(如 because of, in addition to)**不可以被后置**。
- **Because of** his wife('s) being there, I said nothing about it.

[加's 的话, 是带所有格的现在分词; 不加's 的话, 从句 being there 修饰 wife。侧重点不同。]

- <u>In addition to</u> his movie work, Redford is known as a great teacher.

## 12.6 简单介词和复杂介词

最普通的介词是一些单音节词项,如 at, for, in, on, to, with, **除非被后置**,它们通常要**非重读且元音弱化**。

有一些多音节介词,它们中有的向来就是由单音节介词组成的复合词 (例如: inside, within),有的源于分词 (例如: during, concerning, granted),有的由其他语言引入 (例如: despite, except)。

介词数量的增加主要是由于介词与其他词组成了"**复合介词**"。复合介词主要有两大类:

- 分词、形容词、副词或连词 + 简单介词 如: owing to, devoid of, away from, because of ...
- 介词 **1** + 名词 + 介词 **2** 如: in charge of, by means of, at variance with, in addition to, as a result of ...

### 12.7 按表示关系分类

#### 12.7.1 表示空间关系的介词

各介词表示的空间关系可见图 12.1。其实不止是空间,这些介词在表示其他方面时往往也有类似维度上的侧重。

12.7 按表示关系分类 145

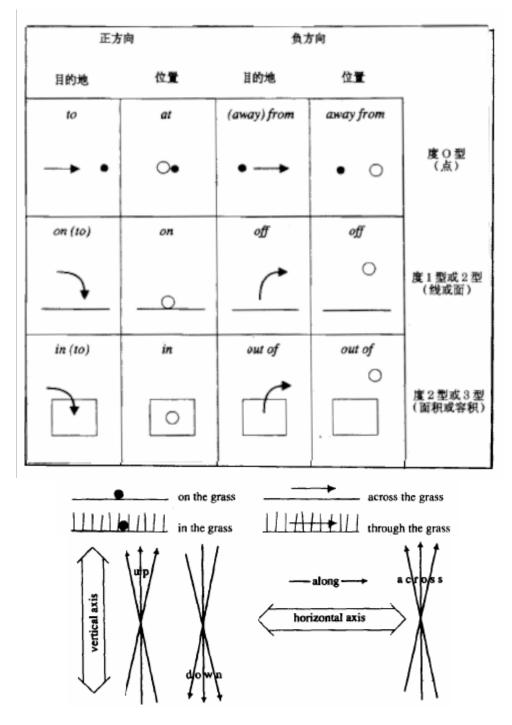


图 12.1:表示空间关系的部分介词

#### in 二维或三维内部

- in a garden/town/country/pool
- in a line/row/queue, in the front/sky/sun, in a letter/picture/photo

#### at 点

ullet at a window/bus stop, at traffic lights, at the door ( $\Box\Box$ )

146 第十二章 介词

- at reception in a hotel, at the entrance to the hotel
- at the top/bottom/end,

#### on 在面上

- on the floor/grass, on a river/road/coast, on the door/wall, on your nose
- on the bottle/door 在瓶子/门(面)上,on the left/right side/hand
- on a map/computer/website/photo

over, under 垂直关系,或者空间上接近。

above, below 仅表示"高于(低于)……水平上"

among, between among 是在非分离的物体之中; between 是在两独立物体之间:

- The house stands  $\begin{cases} between \text{ two farms.} \\ among \text{ farms.} \end{cases}$
- He likes getting among people. [likes mixing with]

其他略。

#### 12.7.2 表示时间的介词

时间范围内一般只有两种度型,时间点和时间段。

时间位置 at, on, in, by at 时间点和节假日

- at 6:30 pm, at the Christmas, at
- 有些时间段被当作时间点来考虑,如: at noon/night/weekdens, at the weekend, at the/that/lunch/breakfast time

on 当作时间段看待的一天

- on Monday, on New Year's Day
- 时间有补足语时也用 on on the following day, on Monday morning, on Saturday afternoon, on the morning of 1 June

但当补足语为 early 或 late 时,用 in in the early morning, in the late afternoon

12.7 按表示关系分类 147

#### in, during 比一天更长或更短的时间段

- in the 18th century, in 1980, in August, in summer, in the evening
- during the 1990s, during Holy Week, during the night (during the = by)

#### 过去或将来时间段 后置副词 ago 过去某一时间点之前的时间段

• We met three months ago.

#### 将来 in 从现在起到未来之间的时间段

• We'll meet  $\begin{cases} in \ three \ months' \ time. \\ (in) \ three \ months \ from \ now. \end{cases}$ 

#### 杂项 如下:

- on time 准时
- in time 及时, 反义词是 too late
- in the end = finally, 反义词 at first
- at the end of the month/the game/January
- at/on the corner of a street
- in the corner of a room
- at home/work/school/university/meeting(家校工作)
- in hospital/prison/jail/bed
- at/in a restaurant/theatre/hotel
- at the station/airport/doctor's

## 持续时间段 for, during, over, (all) through, throughout for 持续整个时间段 for the summer

**during** 时间段中的某个时间段 during the (whole/stay) meeting 如在 during 之后加 whole/stay 修饰的话,则表示整个时间段。

**over, through(out)** over 通常和**表示特殊日子的名词短语**搭配,因此所指的时间一般比 through(out) 所指的更短。

- over the holiday/weekend/Sabbath, over holiday/night
- through(out) the summer

before, after, since, till, until 有时是介词, 有时是连接词。

作介词时, 后面接:

148 第十二章 介词

时间名词短语 after next week

无主语 -ing 从句 since leaving school

从动词派生的或相当于从句的名词短语 till/until the fall of Rome, before the meeting

between ... and, by between ... and 也表示时间段中的一个小时间段, 还可以表示重复出现的相同事物之间的间隔。

- between 5 and 6 o'clock, between lunch and dinner
- between meals/dances/acts/classes

by 事件结果出现的瞬间或时间终点。

- She should be back **by now**.
- By the time we'd walked five miles.

不加时间介词的情况 已有指示词 **last**, **next**, **this**, **that**, **some**, **every** ● last Thursday, next time, every month, this morning

暗含 last, next, this 指示意义的名词 ● today, yesterday, all (the) week

时间介词可省略 ● (for) three months, (for) the whole time

• (on) the day before yesterday, (on) the next day

#### 12.7.3 表示原因和目的的介词

原因、理由和动机 because of, on account of, for, out of 如下:

- He lost his job **because of** his laziness.
- She was fined **for** dangerous driving .
- They died <u>from</u> exposure.

#### 目的、目标和对象 for, to, at 如下:

- **for** We had better set out **for** home.
  - for money/love/shelter
  - She made a beautiful **for her daughter**. [预计接收者]

#### to 实际接收者

12.7 按表示关系分类 149

- She gave a beautiful to her daughter.
- at 暗示"希望达到某种目的"或有"敌意"
  - kick/charge/bite/catch/shoot/chew at [目的不一定最终达成]

#### 12.7.4 表示由手段到刺激因素的介词

介词还可以表示**手段、工具**用来回答"How?"问句,其中 by 可以表达使用的手段,with 可以表达使用的工具,例如:

- I go to work **by** car.
- The thief entered **by** the back door.
- She won the match with her speed.
- He managed to open the car <u>without</u> a key.

与手段和工具相反的是**施事者**,施事者为**生物名词**,可以引发某事。它可以用介词 by 来表达。

- This picture was painted **by** Degas.
- I was bitten by a neighbour's dog.

#### 12.7.5 表示材料、成分的介词 with, of, from

with 与"制作"动词 (verbs of "making") 连用,表示其中一种成分;也可表示遍布性。

- This cake is made <u>with</u> lots of eggs.
- paved <u>with</u> brick, filled <u>with</u> water, loaded <u>with</u> hay

(out) of 表示整个东西的材料或成分; of 还可以与表示"物质"的名词连用, 作后置修 饰语和状语:

- He made the frame (out) of wood. [Wood was the only material.]
- a bracelet of solid gold
- a heart of stone [比喻]

#### from 表示某物来源的一种物质:

• Beer is made <u>from</u> hops.

150 第十二章 介词

#### 12.7.6 基于某标准规格、方面或角色 for, at, as

有些形容词隐含有比较等级:

#### for 基于某标准或规格的形容:

- He's not bad **for** a youngster.
- The dog is long-legged **for** a chihuahua.
- It's a dreadfully expensive toy **for** what it is.

#### at 基于某方面的形容:

- He's good/clever/brilliant/an expert **at** organizing things.
- He's bad/better/terrible/no good at games.
- She's getting on very well at her job.

as 当 as 是 "作为某个角色"的意思时,后面出现的短语表明了原因。

• **As** a doctor, I ought to help you.

#### **12.7.7** from ... to / from ... through

见下:

● The circus will be here four months, <u>from</u> May <u>to</u> September. 马戏团要在这里表演四个月,从五月到九月。

由五月到九月,没有讲明日期,可能是五月中到九月中,所以大概是四个月。但是:

The circus will be here five months, <u>from</u> May <u>through</u> September.
 马戏团要在这里表演五个月,从五月一直到九月。

through 是 "穿过", 所以用来表示起迄时间时, 意思是 "头、尾皆包括在内", 所以是 五月一日至九月卅日, 包含整个的五月和九月, 因而是五个月的时间。

#### 12.7.8 表示……的介词

刺激和反应主要是用 at, with, about, in, of 和 to 来表达:

- I'm surprised <u>at/with</u> her attitude.
- They were all angry <u>at/with</u> Tom for making such a stupid mistake.
   其他略。

12.8 介词副词 151

## 12.8 介词副词

有些介词还可以用作副词, 常常像其省略了补足语的介词形式。

表 12.2: 可用作副词的介词

aboard	about	above	across	after
ahead	along	alongside	around	away
back	before	behind	below	beneath
besides	between	beyond	by	close
down	east	in(side)	instead	near
off	on	opposite	out(side)	over(head)
past	round	since	together	through(out)
up	within	without	under(neat	h)
复杂介词: in/on + 名词 + 介词				

- A car drove {past the door. [介词 past ] past [副词 past ]
- Why didn't you come {before 7 o'clock? [介词 before] before? [副词 before]
- $\bullet \ \ \text{Paul wants to go to the Zoo} \ \begin{cases} \text{instead of staying home.} \\ \text{instead.} \end{cases}$

#### **12.9** Test

- 1. For fear that we should run short of food \_\_ the trip, we are carrying extra rations in the jeep.
  - (A) at

(B) among

(C) in

- (D) on
- 2. \_\_ imprecise calculations, the experiment was a failure.
  - (A) Due

(B) Owing to

(C) Viewing

- (D) According
- 3. The children came rushing \_\_ the sound of the circus parade.
  - (A) on

(B) to

(C) at

(D) beyond

4. Altho	ugh too much leisure may lead pe	eople to a wasteful life, everyone
has a right	a minimum amount of leisure	time.
(A)	with	(B) to
(C)	on	(D) for
5. In the	sentence, "The size of the room is	$'12 \times 14'$ ," the sign "×" is to read
<del></del>	and	(B) with
(C)		(D) cross
6. The o	ffice is open Monday Saturday,	
(A)	since	(B) through
(C)	also	(D) with
7. John's	s parents died when he was only a	child, and ever since he did not
seem to ha	ve a home his own.	
(A)	in	(B) of
(C)	with	(D) at
8. The d	ictionary is sold one hundred d	ollars a copy.
(A)	with	(B) by
(C)	in	(D) at
9. The w	orkers are paid	
(A)	by the week	(B) with a week
(C)	to a week	(D) since a week
10. The te	eam is close to their match.	
(A)	win	(B) wining
(C)	winning	(D) won
11 pri	ces so high, I'll have to do without	a new suit.
(A)	With	(B) Because
(C)	Because of	(D) As
12. Mrs Jo	ohnson's old cat likes to sit the s	sun.
(A)	near	(B) in
(C)	underneath	(D) below
13. You ca	an't do a hard day's work a cup	of coffee and a slice of bread.
(A)		(B) on

12.10 ANSWER 153

(C)	in	(D) at	
14. The necklace you are wearing is very becoming you.			
(A)	at	(B) to	
(C)	for	(D) with	
15. In the	photograph the man's face is fo	ocus and blurred.	
(A)	out of	(B) with	
(C)	on	(D) to	
16 The 取得了巨大的	e bad weather, the event was a grea 的成功。	it success. 尽管天气恶劣,活动还是	
	Although	(B) Despite	
` '	In respect of	(D) On behalf of	
17. bei	ng portable, a walk-man provides a	a high quality of sound.	
	Aside	(B) Far from	
	Beside	(D) Besides	
18. Georg	18. George likes all vegetables for spinach.		
(A)	except	(B) accept	
(C)	excuse	(D) expect	
19 the	e weather, forecast or anticipated, a	a true English gentleman always	
carries an ı	ımbrella, wherever he goes.		
(A)	Regardless	(B) Regard	
(C)	Regard of	(D) Regardless of	
20. I welcome you most cordially, both personally and behalf of the faculty			
and the stu	ıdent body.		
(A)	in	(B) at	
(C)	on	(D) to	
	10.10 1.00	-1-0-4	

#### **12.10 Answer**

- 1. (A) the trip 是一段时间,也是一条路程,通常用 on the trip。
- 2. (B) owing to 类似 because of,表示因果关系。A 和 D 都要加上 to 才能当短语用,C 的 viewing 不能当介词用,只有 considering 可以这样使用。
  - 3. (C) 用 at the sound 表示"听到声音那一刻,马上就冲出来"。

- 4. (B) a right to 表示"对于某事的权利", 是常用短语。
- 5. (C) 表示长宽(面积)的"×"读为 by。
- 6. (B) through 表示头尾包括在内, 故一周中只有 Sunday 不开。
- 7. (B) 这是**双重所有格**,以 a home of his own 的方式来同时表示 a home 和 his own home。
  - 8. (D) "以……之单价出售",应用 at。
  - 9. (A) 每周计算应用 by the week。
- 10. (C) 空格前的 to 是 close to 的一部分,应当介词看待,因而要接动名词作宾语。
- 11. (A) with prices so high 是以介词短语方式来减化状语从句 because prices are so high。答案 C 的后面应改为 because of high prices 方可。答案 B 和 D 都是从属连接词,可是这两词后面的从句缺了动词。
  - 12. (B) 本句中 the sun 指阳光,是立体的范围,故用 in。
  - 13. (B) on a cup of coffee…表示"只靠一杯咖啡……(来维持体力)"。
  - 14. (B) becoming to one 表示"很适合某人(穿戴)"。
  - 15. (A) 因为下文说 blurred (模糊), 故选 out of focus (没对好焦距)。
- 16. (B) 下文说活动取得巨大成功,前面则是"坏天气",故表示"相反"的关系(A或 B)。而 A的 although 是从属连接词,不能连接名词短语 the bad weather,故用介词的 B。
- 17. (D) "除了"可手提, 还可提供高品质音响。这个"除了"是"除了这还有那"的意思, 应用 besides。C 的 beside 是"在……旁边", A 的 aside 是副词, B 的 far from则是"决非……"。
  - 18. (A) except for 表示"除了……以外",表示"这个不算"。
  - 19. (D) regardless of 是"不顾,不管"。
  - 20. (C) on behalf of 是"代表"。

## 第十三章 主语-谓语一致

### 13.1 主谓一致和就近原则

在英语中,最重要的一致关系类型是主语和谓语动词之间第三人称数的一致。单数主语需要用单数动词,复数主语需要复数动词。

注意: 在名词短语表示主语时, 由名词短语的中心词来决定名词短语的单复数:

- The change in husbands' attitudes is most obvious in their families.
- The changes in husbands' attitude are most obvious in their families.

从句、介词短语和副词作为主语一般算作单数:

- Smoking cigarettes is dangerous to your health .
- In the evenings is best for me.

名字、标题、引文即使是复数名词短语, 也算作单数。

就近原则 (proximity) 是指动词形式与紧靠在他前面的名词短语相一致。如 either ... or ..., neither ... nor ....

- Either your brakes **or your eyesight is** at fault.
- Neither you, nor I, **nor anyone else knows** the answer.

在中国英语教学中, there be ... 也采用就近原则, 但这其实是过时或者不准确的, 注意随机应变吧。

• There **is/are** an apple, two pears and some oranges on the table.

## 13.2 主语是一个还是两个人(或物)?

这部分主要讨论对等连接词 and 的判断。请比较:

- Ex. 1 Your brother John (have) come to see you.
- Ex. 2 Your brother and John (have) come to see you.

句 1 中的 your brother 可以看出来就是 John,是同一个人,所以是单数的主语,要用单数的动词。然而在句 2 中一旦加上对等连接词,成为 your brother and John 之后,就是两个人,是复数的主语,要用复数的动词。一般说来,对等连接词 and 出现在主语中,往往表示主语有两个人(或物),所以应该是复数。

正确用法: Ex. 1 has Ex. 2 have

以上是大家都知道的判断原则。再下来就有了变化。请看:

- Ex. 3 The senator and delegate (want) to make an announcement.
- Ex. 4 The senator and the delegate (want) to make an announcement. senator 是参议员, delegate 是代表。到底是一个人还是两个人要发表声明呢? 本书前面曾讨论到名词短语, 现在要用这个观念来帮忙了。

名词短语有三个构成元素:限定词(包括冠词)、形容词与名词。其中任一元素都可省略。例如 the rich 这个名词短语就只有限定词 the 和形容词 rich,把名词 (people)省略了。

句 3 的主语 the senator and delegate 可视为一个名词短语。限定词只留一个 the, 名词部分则用 and 连接 senator 和 delegate。这种情形应视为一个人,同时具有参议员和代表双重身分,所以是单数。

**句 4 中的主语 the senator 和 the delegate 各有限定词,需视为两个名词短语**,因而是指两个人,动词也就该用复数。

正确用法: Ex. 3 wants Ex. 4 want

因此限定词可以帮助判断名词短语的单复数。不过 every 这个限定词又有不同的考量。例如:

• Ex. 5 Every man and every woman (have) to do something for the country.

句中主语 every man 和 every woman 虽然各有限定词,是两个名词短语,似乎代表复数。不过再从意思上判断,man 和 woman 是相对称的内容,指人的两种性别。重复 every 是为了加强语气:不是指有两个人,而是表示不论男女,每一个"人"。亦即 every man and every woman 的语气近似 man or woman, every "person",所以应该选择单数的动词。

正确用法: Ex. 5 has

这个情况有点近似英语的一个成语:

• Ex. 6 All work and no play (make) Jack a dull boy.

主语 all work 和 no play 是两个名词短语(all 和 no 都是限定词),似乎应为复数。不过从内容上来看,一天二十四小时都在工作(all work),就表示没有任何时间游戏(no play)。所以 all work and no play 与其说是两件事,不如说是同一件事情的一体两面,重复是为了加强语气。因此动词应选单数。

正确用法: Ex. 6 makes

再看一个可以用限定词帮助判断的例子:

- Ex. 7 A cup and saucer (be) placed on the table.
- Ex. 8 A cup and a dish (be) placed on the table.

句 7 中的 saucer 是放在咖啡杯下的小碟子, 杯与碟可视为一组, 所以主语中 a cup and saucer 只用了一个限定词 a, 当"一组咖啡杯"看待, 是单一的名词短语, 应作单数。

句 8 中的主语,一个是杯子,一个是菜盘子,这两件东西不能当一组看待,所以用 a cup and a dish 这两个名词短语来表示,因此动词要用复数。

正确用法: Ex. 7 is Ex. 8 are

下面这个例子可采同样原则,借助限定词来判断单复数,读者请自行练习一下:

- Ex. 9 A brown and white dog (be) at your doorsteps.
- Ex. 10 A brown and a white dog (be) fighting over a bone.

正确用法: Ex. 9 is Ex. 10 are

以上所述大抵都可借助限定词来观察一致性。如果没有限定词呢?请看下例:

- Ex. 11 Bread and butter (be) not very tasty but very filling.
- Ex. 12 Bread and butter (have) both risen in price.

bread 和 butter 都不可数,使用零冠词(zero article),因而看不到限定词。这时要从意思上判断单复数。句 11 说 bread and butter "不怎么好吃,但是吃得饱"。bread 有人吃到饱,不过大概没有人只拿着 butter 吃到饱吧?所以这个句子中的 bread and butter 应该是一种食品:吐司面包涂奶油。从意思上判断是单数,应用单数动词。

句 12 中既然说 bread and butter "双双涨价",自然是两种民生物资,应视为复数。

正确用法: Ex. 11 is Ex. 12 have

下面这个例子也缺限定词,请读者练习:

• Ex. 13 Oil and water (do) not mix.

正确用法: Ex. 13 do (油和水这"两种"物质无法混合。这是一句英语谚语。)

## 13.3 主语是哪一个?

这部分主要讨论主语中夹有对等连接词 or、but,以及比较级连接词 as、than 时的判断。

13.3 主语是哪一个? 159

• Ex. 14 You want to borrow money? But I, as well as you, (be) broke.

一般语法书碰到这种状况又是列出规则叫人背,其实如果了解简化从句,根本不必背。这个句子可以还原为完整的句子:

• I am broke as well as you are.

句中的第二个 as 就是比较级的连接词,前面的 I am broke 是主要从句,后面的 you are 是从句。后者在比较级简化时可以把 be 动词省略,成为 as well as you,再把它向前移动,就变成句 14 的 I, as well as you 了。由此可以看出,句 14 括 弧中的动词属于主要从句,是 I 的动词,与 as well as you 无关。

正确用法: Ex. 14 am

下面这个例子也是同样的道理:

• Ex. 15 I, no less than you, (be) responsible.

这个句子可以还原为:

• I am no less responsible than you are.

同样的, no less than you are 这个比较级的句子可以简化, 省略 are, 再往前移, 所以句 15 的动词也应该依它的主语 I 而定。

正确用法: Ex. 15 am

以上是比较级连接词 than 和 as 的判断。接下来看对等连接词 but 的情形。**but 这个连接词表达相反关系,连接的两部分通常是一个肯定,一个否定。在主语当中否定的部分等于被排除掉,动词要视肯定的部分而定**,例如:

• Ex. 16 Everyone but a few complete idiots (be) able to see that.

主语当中用 but 来连接,等于排除掉后面 a few complete idiots 的部分,因而动词要视 everyone 而定。

正确用法: Ex. 16 was

再看这个例子:

• Ex. 17 The eggs, not the hen, (be) stolen.

主语 the eggs, not the hen 里面虽然没有 but,可是意思、功能和 the eggs but not the hen 相同,后面的部分要排除(因为母鸡没被偷走,动词要跟 the eggs)。

正确用法: Ex. 17 were

下面这个例子比较复杂些:

• Ex. 18 Not only you but also I (be) at fault.

主语 not only you but also I 在意思上虽然是 you 和 I 都算在内,不过语气偏重在 I 的部分。而且对等连接词前面的部分有 not,表示形式上否定掉前面的 you,所以主语要跟后面的 I 走。

正确用法: Ex. 18 was

最后来看看对等连接词 or 的判断。这个连接词表达的逻辑关系是"二选一",不同于 and 表示"两边都算"以及 but 表示"否定掉一个"。二选一该选哪一个做主语,完全没有暗示,所以在用法上是"选靠近动词的部分"做主语。例如:

• Ex. 19 Either my father alone or both my parents (be) coming. either ... or ... 就近原则,选靠近动词的 both my parents 做主语。

正确用法: Ex. 19 are

下面这个句子差不多, 请读者自行判断:

• Ex. 20 Neither he nor his friends (be) there at that time.

正确用法: Ex. 20 were

最后这个句子要考虑一下:

• Ex. 21 (Do) he or his friends want to go?

这是疑问句,负责交代一致性的助动词靠近前面的 he,所以要选 he 做主语。

正确用法: Ex. 21 **Dose** 

# 13.4 主语中有 every、each、either、neither 等表示 "一"的字眼时

只要有这些表示"一"的字眼在,后面有名词的话就得使用**单数名词**,做主语时也就得用**单数动词**配合。这很容易了解,请读者自行练习:

• Ex. 22 Everybody (be) to report here tomorrow.

正确用法: Ex. 22 is

• Ex. 23 Every student (have) several chapters to report on.

正确用法: Ex. 23 has

• Ex. 24 Each (have) to make a five-minute speech.

正确用法: Ex. 24 has

• Ex. 25 You (have) to make a five-minute speech each.

正确用法: Ex. 25 have (each 在这里用作修饰语,主语是表示"你们"的 yon, 所以是复数)

• Ex. 26 Each of you (be) responsible for half of the job.

正确用法: Ex. 26 is (这时主语是 each, 原来的 you 变成介词 of 的宾语, 既然 each 当主语, 就是单数)

## 13.5 主语是关系代词时

关系代词代表其先行词。它本身没有单复数的变化,作主语时完全要看它代表的先 行词是什么,借以判断一致性。例如: • Ex. 27 I don't trust people who (talk) too much.

people 是先行词,关系从句 who (talk) too much 还原成单句就是 people (talk) too much, 所以动词等于是由 people 决定。

正确用法: Ex. 27 talk

#### 下面这一组句子需要多考虑一下:

- Ex. 28 He has three options, which (look) equally attractive.
- Ex. 29 He has three options, which (be) a good thing.

句 28 中的 which 应是代表先行词 three options (三项选择),这从关系从句的句意"看起来都一样吸引人"可以判断出来。因此它的动词应是复数。

句 29 中的 which 则应解释为前面的整句话(he has three options),同样可以从句意看出来:他有三项选择可选,"这是一件好事"。

which 既然代表一个句子,表示"那件事",所以应该认定为单数。

正确用法: Ex. 28 look Ex. 29 is

下面这个句子有两个地方需要分别判断:

• Ex. 30 It (be) the Johnson boys who (be) here last night.

主要从句的主语是个虚字 It。虽然补语是复数 the Johnson boys,可是动词得依主语而定,应用单数形式。后面的 who 从句中主语代表的是先行词 the Johnson boys,所以动词要用复数。

正确用法: Ex. 30 was, were

## 13.6 以单位做主语时

**度量衡、时间、金钱等单位常以复数形态出现,做主语时却不一定要当复数看**。请看下例:

• Ex. 31 He makes eighty thousand dollars a year, which (be) a lot of money.

关系词 which 代表的是 eighty thousand dollars,看起来是复数。不过想一想,这并不表示"八万个一块钱"的概念,而是有八万之多的"一笔钱",所以要当单数看。

正确用法: Ex. 31 is

#### 下面这个例子也差不多:

• Ex. 32 Ten seconds (be) quite a record for the 100–meter dash.

主语 Ten seconds 只是量出一段时间,表示是百米短跑的一项优良纪录,并不是"十个一秒钟",所以要用单数动词。

正确用法: Ex. 32 is

## 13.7 主语后面有介词短语时

一般说来,介词短语并不能影响主语是单数还是复数,所以在判断一致性时可以不去管它。不过有些情况还是需要留意。

## 13.7.1 一般情形

• Ex. 33 Mrs. Lindsey, together with her sons, (be) on a European tour. together with her sons 是主语 Mrs. Lindsey 的非限制性修饰语, 主语仍是 Mrs. Lindsey, 这个句子主要在交代"这位太太"做了什么, 要用单数。

正确用法: Ex. 33 is

下面这些例子也差不多, 请读者自行判断:

• Ex. 34 The use of computers in business (be) now almost inevitable.

正确用法: Ex. 34 is (主语是 use)

• Ex. 35 There (be) a list of things to buy in the handbag.

正确用法: Ex. 35 is (主语是 list。手提包里只有单子,没有一堆东西。)

## 13.8 主语为空的字眼时

如果主语是空的,只表达"全部/部分"的概念,看不出是什么东西,这时才要看后 面的介词短语来判断单复数。例如:

- Ex. 36 All of these (be) Lishan pears.
- Ex. 37 All of the money (have) been spent.

主语 all 是空的字眼,看不出是什么。如果后面是 of these(指梨山的梨子)就是复数。如果接 of the money 就是单数。

正确用法: Ex. 36 are Ex. 37 has

下面这句有点变化:

• Ex. 38 All but one of the pears (be) ripe.

主语中有对等连接词 but,它否定掉后面的 one,留下前面的 all 做主语。而 all 的内容由 of the pears 可看出是复数,所以要用复数动词。

正确用法: Ex. 38 are

下面这些例子判断的原则相同,读者可以试做看看。

• Ex. 39 A lot of the pears (be) damaged.

正确用法: Ex. 39 are

• Ex. 40 A lot of time (have) been wasted.

正确用法: Ex. 40 has

• Ex. 41 Half of the pears still (look) good.

正确用法: Ex. 41 **look** 

• Ex. 42 Half of this pear (be) rotten.

正确用法: Ex. 42 is

• Ex. 43 Some of the cost (be) in transportation.

正确用法: Ex. 43 is

• Ex. 44 None of the pears (be) really good to eat.

正确用法: Ex. 44 is 或 are (none 是 not one, 形状与意思都是单数, 可采单数 动词。不过它也可算是空的字眼, 由后面的复数 of the pears 决定它为复数, 所以这个字当主语时, 单、复数动词都可以, 也都有人用。)

## 13.8.1 a number / the number 的判断

the number 就是 that number, 指的是一个数字, 所以是单数。a number, "某个数目的……",则是指若干个可以数得出数目的东西,所以要用复数动词。例如:

- Ex. 45 The number of people in the demonstration (be) five thousand.
- Ex. 46 A number of people (have) brought eggs to throw.

句 45 中 the number 是 five thousand 的意思,为数目字,所以当主语时要用单数。后者的 a number of people 则相当于 some people,要用复数。

正确用法: Ex. 45 is Ex. 46 have

## 13.8.2 a pair of ... 的判断

英语里有些东西习惯用 a pair of 来表示。如果主语是 a pair, 就是 one pair, 那么应该是单数。例如:

• Ex. 47 A pair of pants (be) hanging on the wall.

正确用法: Ex. 47 is

不过英语里面要用 a pair 来表示的东西,像 shoes、glasses、trousers、scissors等等,也可以直接说 these shoes... 等,这时当然要用复数。

• Ex. 48 These pants (be) very fancy.

正确用法: Ex. 48 are (从这个句子中看不出 these pants 是一条裤子还是几条裤子, 因为同样都要用复数形式。)

## 13.9 集合名词

结束了主语后面接介词的探讨,现在来讨论一下集合名词(Collective Nouns)。集合名词在英语中不多,常见的只有 staff(员工、幕僚)、faculty(教员)、以及 family、police、committee、crew(机员、船员)这几个字。这种词用来表示"一个单位、集团"时要用单数动词,但是不加 -s 而用来表示单位内的"成员"时,要用复数动词。例如:

• Ex. 49 The committee (be) studying the proposal.

这个句子中的 committee 解释为委员会这个"会"也通(用单数动词);解释为会中的"委员们"也通(用复数动词)。

正确用法: Ex. 49 is 或 are

不过有时候要从意思上作更精确的判断,例如:

• Ex. 50 The committee (be) five years old.

这时把 committee 解释为委员们似乎不太通——太年轻了。应该是一个"单位",委员会成立五年了。

正确用法: Ex. 50 is

• Ex. 51 The committee (be) mostly Republican politicians.

从补语"大多为共和党政客"来看,主语 committee 应解释为"委员们"比较合理,所以要用复数。

正确用法: Ex. 51 are

## 13.10 一些以 s 结尾的名词

名词词尾的 s 不见得是复数,有些反而只能用单数形式,像有些代表学科、疾病的字眼经常是如此。

例如:

• Ex. 52 Mathematics (be) my forte.

数学我最拿手。

正确用法: Ex. 52 is

• Ex. 53 Mumps primarily (attack) children.

腮腺炎好发于儿童。

正确用法: Ex. 53 attacks

还有一些要从意思来判断,例如:

• Ex. 54 Statistics (be) born in the gambling house.

主语 statistics 代表"统计学",应用单数。

正确用法: Ex. 54 was

• Ex. 55 The statistics (be) not all accurate.

这时 statistics 代表一批统计数字(才能说"并非全都正确"), 所以要用复数。

正确用法: Ex. 55 are

以上所述,大致涵盖了处理一致性的所有重要原则。不过这方面的问题是知易行难。 读者一定要多读多写,才能避免错误。

本章全用例题说明,因而不另附练习。

# 第十四章 替代形式和省略

## 14.1 替代形式

#### 14.1.1 the same

- A: Can I have <u>a cup of tea</u>, please?
   B: Give me the same, please.
- Yesterday I felt <u>sad</u> and today I feel <u>the same</u>.
- The Denison house is **small but very comfortable**, and ours is just **the same**.

#### 14.1.2 one, ones, some

one 的复数形式是 some 或 ones。两种都是**非重音** (因此与数字 one 区分), 而且都替代**可数名词**。

some 也可以替代不可数名词。

- Have you any **knives**? I need a sharp **one**.
- I like those **shoes**, but let's buy these **ones**.
- Shall I pass the butter? Or have you got some already?

#### 14.1.3 so

- You asked me to leave, and 'so I DìD.
- You asked me to leave, and I DìD so.
- A: It's starting to snow. B: 'So it is!

## 14.2 省略

#### 14.2.1 省略是省约的一种

**省略** (ellipsis) 可以严格地被称为**语法省约** (grammatical omission),它有别于语言中其他省约类型,譬如单词的**词首音节脱落** (apheresis)(cos = because , 'k you = thank you,'d you = would you rather),**单词的截短法** (influenza = flu) 和**语义蕴含** (Frankly, ... )等。

省略与其他省约类型的区别主要在于, 省略强调:

逐字还原 (VERBATIM RECOVERABILITY) 能够精确恢复和重新某一段文字、发音和记录的内容。

但实际上,省略与其他省约方式仍有递差,其严格程度也有差别,并不存在完全分界线。

	1		1		tol t→	
_a	b		<u>a</u>	<u>e</u>	例句	省略类型
+	+	+	+	+	I'm happy if you are (happy).	严格省略
+	+	+	+	-	She sings better than I can $(sing)$ . [NOT $sings$ ]	标准省略
+	?	-	+	$\oplus$	She works harder than <i>him</i> (*works). [NOT <del>he</del> ]	准省略
+	+	+	-		(I am) Glad to see you.	实境省略
-	+	+	+	-	(Since he was / Being) Angry, he stalked out.	弱省略
+	?	+	-		I believe (that) you are wrong.	结构省略
-	+	+	-		The man (that/who/whom) I saw was half asleep.	弱省略
-	?	+	-		Houses (that/which are) owned by Mr Smith.	弱省略
-	-	+	-		The door opened and (then/after that/) Mary entered.	语义蕴含

表 14.1: 省略标准的递差——从省略到其他省约

#### 省略标准

- a: 省略词语可以准确还原。
- b: 省略的结构为语法"缺陷"。
- c: 还原词语后句子符合语法, 且与原句意相同。
- d: 省略词语可根据篇章(而不是结构或实境)还原。
- e: 省略词语与先行词完全相同。

#### 符号说明

- + 符合标准 ⊕ 适用标准须作语法变化 不符标准
- ? 不确定 空白 不涉及

14.3 省略的还原类型 171

## 14.2.2 省略的位置分类

句首省略 (I) Hope he's there.

句中省略 Jill owns a Volvo and Fred (owns) a BMW.

句尾省略 I know that we haven't studied hard yet, but we will (study hard).

## 14.3 省略的还原类型

#### 14.3.1 实境省略

典型的实境省略是句首省略,尤其是采取**省略主语、功能词或两者都省略**这两个成分的形式。

陈述句中的省略:

- (I) Told you so.
- (I'm) Sorry I couldn't be there.
- (It's) Good to see you.
- (I'll) See you later.

疑问句中的省略:

- (Are you) In trouble?
- (Is there) Anybody in?
- (Do you) Want some?
- (Have you) Got any money?
- (Does) 'Anybody need a lift?
- (Has) 'Jack done her homework?

## 14.3.2 结构省略

- I believe (that) you are mistaken.
- We're staying there (for) another three weeks. [非正式]

#### 篇章省略

略

## 第十五章 简单句

## 15.1 简单句和多重句

简单句 (SIMPLE) 只有一个独立从句构成的句子。

**多重句 (MULTIPILE SENTENCES)** 有一个及以上从句作为句子的直接成分。还可以细分为:

复合句 (COMPLEX) 从句 (SUBORDINATE CLASUSES) 作为一个(以上)句 子成分,如直接宾语或状语;通常由一个从属连接词 (CONJUNCTION)引导。

联合句 (COMPOUND) 两个或两个以上并列从句 (COORDINATE clauses)。

语法等级体系中相等地位的两个或两个以上的单位,可构成一个与之性质相同的单位。这种结构称为并列关系 (COORDINATION),而且像从属关系一样,由一个称为连词的连接词明确表示出来. 这种连词叫并列 (COORDINATING)连词。

#### 夸克的从句分类方法与其他一些语法书不同, 比较复杂, 暂且不论。

关于从句结构和成分划分可以有一种以上的分析方法。因英语中遍布各处的递差造成较多模糊性;通常这些模糊之处并不重要,只是需要建立自己较为自洽的分析方法。

例如: 如对所有的介词短语来说, 附加状语或补语的界限并不清楚。

- They were <u>out of breath</u>. They were <u>breathless</u>.
- She is/feels <u>in good health</u>. She is/feels <u>healthy</u>.
- She is **young** and **in good health**.

和本书不同,"简单句"这一术语在其他语法书中经常用来指一个不包含另一从句的独立从句,而不管所包含的从句是不是句子的直接成分。有些语法书,把非限定结构(这种结构含有一个非限定动词作为动词成分)看作是短语而不是从句。我们则把这种结构看作是从句,因为可以把它分解为从句成分。非限定从句本身就是从属性质的,因此不能成为典型的简单句形式

## 15.2 否定

#### 15.2.1 否定的三种类型

从句否定 (CLAUSE NEGATION) 从句法上将整个从句作为否定处理。

局部否定 (LOCAL NEGATION) 否定从句中某个成分。

**谓体否定 (PREDICATION NEGATION)** 一般指示用于某些助动词后面较次要的否定 类型,否定主要动词及之后的部分(谓体)。

#### 15.2.2 从句否定

**动词否定** 最常见的形式。如无助动词,谓语部分加入假位 (dummy) 助动词 DO; 在第一个助动词后加入否定词 not。

**形式和意义上的否定** 使用 no, not, never, none 等否定一个从句成分,通过此方式来否定从句。

正式文体中,否定整个从句的成分可以从它通常的位置移到句首。在这种情况下,主语和功能词常常需要**倒装**(详见 25.2 节)。

- **意义否定但形式不否定的词** 如 few, little, hardly, barely, scarely, rarely, seldom 等词, 也可实现从句否定:例如后面跟着非断定形式;或和肯定附加疑问句连用:
  - I <u>seldom</u> get <u>any</u> sleep.
  - <u>Hardly anyone</u> wants to work.
  - They <u>scarcely</u> seem to care, <u>do they</u>?
  - They <u>hardly</u> have any friends, <u>do they</u>?

当这些副词在文学和演说题材中作为状语或作为状语中的修饰语置于句首时,通常主语和功能词倒装:

- <u>Little did I</u> expect such kindness from so many.
- Rarely does crime pay so well as many people think.

动词否定(左)和形式意义否定(右)的例句:

- That was **not** an accident.
- That was **no** an accident.
- He is **not** a friend of yours.
- He is **no** friend of yours.

15.2 否定 175

- An honest man would **not** lie.
- No honest man would lie.

• She isn't a fool.

- She is **no** a fool.
- They are <u>not</u> staying with us <u>any</u> They are <u>no longer</u> staying with us. longer.
- I wo<u>n't</u> make that mistake ever again. I will <u>never</u> make that mistake ever again.

从句否定的一些特点:

**否定从句后面附加补充从句** ● I haven't finished, <u>nor</u>/<u>and neither</u> have you. [附加 否定从句]

I've finished and **so** have you. [前后均肯定从句]

- I haven't finished, but YÓU HÀVE. [附加肯定从句] I've finished, and ÝOU have TÒO. [前后均肯定从句]
- 否定从句后跟赞同否定 "He doesn't know Russian." "NÒ, he DÒESn't." [比较: "He knows Russian." "YÈS, he DÒES"]
- either 和 too She won't notice <u>any</u> change in you, <u>either</u>. [比较: She will notice <u>some</u> change in you, <u>too</u>.]

## 15.2.3 局部否定

局部否定否定一个词或短语, 而不否定从句。

- I visit them <u>not very often</u>.
- Not surprisingly, they missed the train.
- They live **not far** from us.
- Our house has one wall with **no windows**.

## 15.2.4 谓体否定

情态助动词后停顿,强调 not,用来否定谓体,而不是整个从句。

- They may | 'not go swimming.

  [They are allowed not to go swimming.]
- You can simply | 'not obey the order.
- She didn't | 'not like them.

176 第十五章 简单句

#### 15.2.5 否定的范围

即使在从句否定中, 否定成分以前的状语也通常不包括在否定范围之内。如:

• She definitely **didn't speak to him**.

[她肯定没有跟他说话。]

• She didn't definitely speak to him.

[她不一定跟他说过话。]

• I wasn't L**Ĭstening** all the TÌME.

[我一直没有听。] 通过语调变化表明否定范围。

• I wasn't listening all the TĬME.

[我不是一直在听。] 通过语调变化表明否定范围。

• I <u>didn't listen</u> to *some* of the speakers.

我没有听一些人讲话, 但听了另一些人讲话。

• I didn't listen to any of the speakers.

我没有听任何人讲话。

## 15.2.6 语音可表明否定的焦点

英语语音中用于比较或突出重点信息的重音焦点可以表明否定和肯定的部分。

1. I didn't take John to swim in the POOL today.

[didn't do so]

2. I didn't take JŎHN to swim in the pool today.

[it maybe Mary]

3. I **didn't take John to SWĬM** in the pool today.

[just go to the pool, but they don't swim ]

4. I didn't take John to swim in the POOL today.

[may take John to the seaside]

5. I didn't take John to swim in the pool toDĂY.

[maybe yesterday]

6. **<u>I</u>** didn't take John to swim in the pool today.

[someone else takes John to do so]

还可以:

- I didn't leave HOME because I was afraid of my FAther.
- I didn't | <u>leave home because I was afraid of my FĂther</u>. [I had left home, but it wasn't because of my father.]

## 15.3 句子类型和话语功能

简单句可以分为四种主要句法类型,并与话语功能息息相关。

陈述句 句子有主语,并且主语位于动词前:

• Richard gave Tom a watch for his birthday.

另外,一些句子因情景中已暗含主语,省略了主语

- (I'm) Sorry I couldn't be there.
- (It's) Good to see you.
- (I'll) See you later.

另外 there/here be 陈述句中,主语在谓语 be 动词之后。这其实是存在句,见 25.4 节。

疑问句 一般分为如下两种:

- 一般 (yes-no) 疑问句 如果没有助动词,则加一个假位助动词 DO,如例句中的did;且将句子中的第一助动词前置于主语之前,:
  - <u>Did Richard gave</u> Tom a watch for his birthday? 疑问句通常在信息中心上用升调。上句可将升调放在 watch 或 birthday, 两者有着不一样的焦点。

特殊 (Wh-) 疑问句 wh-特殊疑问词位于句首,后接一般疑问句样式:

• What did Richard give Tom for his birthday?

祈使句 一般没有明显的主语,并且使用动词原形:

- <u>Give</u> Tom a watch for his birthday.
- Let us all work hard.
   宾格主语前加 let, 宾格后加动词原形。

178 第十五章 简单句

感叹句 句子由在名词短语中作前位限定词的 what,或作形容词、副词或从句强化语的 how 及相关语句成分(如宾语、补语、状语和主语)前置引导。

wh-成分可以是:

主语 What a beautiful girl came!

宾语 What a fine watch he received for his birthday!

补语 How beautiful she is!

状语 How quickly you eat!

What a long time we've been waiting!

介词补足语 What a mess the room was in!

#### 15.3.1 Wh- 疑问句

Wh- 疑问句是由简单的疑问词协助构成的 (或 wh- 词), 如: who/ whom/whose, what, which, when, where, how, why。

不同于 yes-no 疑问句的是, Wh-疑问句一般是降调。

带有 wh- 词的介词性补语:

正式体 介词 + wh- 位于句首

- To whom should I write?
- <u>In which</u> city did you grow up?
- At what time does the train depart?

非正式体 wh- 位于句首

- Who/Whom should I write to?
- Which city did you grow up in?
- What time does the train depart (at)?

工具、原因和目的 就表示工具,原因,和目的的附加成分发问,wh-位于句首

- What shall I mend it with?
- What are you fighting for?

## 15.3.2 其他疑问句

否定的一般疑问句 否定的疑问句, 倾向于否定, 但像一般疑问句一样回答。如:

- Didn't you believe me?
- **Aren't** you joining us this evening?
- Haven't he told you what to do?
- Have they never intited you home?

附加疑问句 前半句为肯定或否定陈述句,后半句一般是相反的疑问。如:

- The boad hasn't left, has it?
- She **knows** you, **doesn't** she?

附加疑问句的核心语调落在助动词上,升调或降调表示不同倾向。夸克用 + 表示 肯定, - 表示否定,如下:

- 1. + S T 附加疑问是升调,表倾向中性。如:
- He <u>likes</u> his JÒB, <u>DÓESn't</u> he?
  - 2.  $-\dot{S} + \dot{T}$  附加疑问是升调,表倾向中性。如:
- He <u>doesn't like</u> his JOB, <u>DOES</u> he?
  - 3. + **à T** 附加疑问是降调,倾向与前面的陈述句一样。如:
- He likes his JÒB, DÒESn't he? [肯定倾向]
  - 4.  $-\dot{S} + \dot{T}$  附加疑问是降调,倾向与前面的陈述句一样。如:
- He doesn't like his JOB, DOES he? [否定倾向]
- 5. **+s + f 比较少见**的句式是陈述部分和附加疑问**都是肯定**,常有训斥或讽刺意味。如:
- Oh, you've had another ÀCcident, HÁVE you?
- So that's your GAME, **ÍS** it?

回响疑问句 重复部分或者是全部已讲过的话, 以期得到确认。

- A: The Browns are emigrating. B: **Émigrating?**
- A: He's a doctor. B: **Whát** is he?

第十五章 简单句

- A: I'll pay for it. B: You'll <u>whát</u>?
- A: Have you ever been to BJ? B: Have I ever been whére?

**陈述疑问句** 随便文体,多用于口语;形式上和陈述句一致,句尾语调是疑问句的升调;希望得到听话人的认可。如:

- You've got a **DÓCtor**?
- He didn't finish the **RÁCE**?

# 第二部分 中级句型——多重句

## 第十六章 联合句或并列句

## 16.1 并列连词 and, or, but

对等连接词(主要是 and, or 与 but 三个) 用来连接句子中两个对等的部分(单词或短语), 也可以连接两个对等的从句。所谓对等, 指的是**结构与内容两方面都要对称**, 而且对得越工整越好。

# 16.2 关联连词 both ... and, either ... or, neither ... nor

if ... then, whether ... or 等**关联从属连词**,暂且不表。

either ... or 强调 or 的排他 (EXCLUSIVE) 含义。

- <u>Either</u> the room is too small <u>or</u> the piano is too large.
- <u>Either</u> Sylvia <u>or</u> her sister will be staying with us.

both ... and 强调 and 的补充 (ADDITIVE) 含义, 前后并列同等。

- Mary **both** washed the dishes **and** dried them.
- Both Mary and Peter washed the dishes.

**nor**, **neither nor 或 neither 可单独用作否定补充副词**, 而不是作为一对关联连词。他们一般预先假定前文有着或明或暗的否定意义。

- She doesn't like them and **nor** does her brother.
- "I'm not going." "Nor am I."
- They never forgave him for the insult, and/but <u>neither/nor</u> could he rid himself of the feelings of guilt for having spoken in that way.

#### 关联连词 neither ... nor 组合使用:

- David <u>neither</u> loves Joan, <u>nor</u> wants to marry her.
- Neither peter nor his wife wanted the responsibility.

not (only) ... but 不但……而且……

- Columbus **not only** plays hard **but also** works hard.
- <u>Not only did</u> they break in to Mr. Zhang's office, <u>but</u> they also stole his books.

为加强语气,可将 Not only 倒装于句首,后接表强调的助动词 DO + 主谓从句。

因为传统语法认为**并列从句彼此要功能和地位相等**,所以 Not only 倒装时,前后都是完整句子 they ...

## 16.3 准并列连词

准并列连词 (QUASI-COORDINATORS) 有时候像并列连词,有时候又像从属连词或介词。他们有:

比较形式 as well as, as much as, rather than, more than

关联连词 not so much ... as

其他 if not, not to say

其他略。

## **16.4** Test

请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

1. Gold not only looks beautiful	lasts forever.
(A) and	(B) nevertheless
(C) but also	(D) besides

- 2. \_\_ to militarism nor the imposition of a totalitarianism could long guarantee Japan victory in war.
  - (A) The devotion is neither (B) Neither is the devotion
  - (C) The devotion, neither (D) Neither the devotion

16.4 TEST 185

3. Democracy is not the ideal political inst	citution, it is an optimal one.
(A) where	(B) and
(C) so	(D) but
<ul> <li>4. War is destructive, wasteful, and</li> <li>(A) ultimately futile</li> <li>(B) an ultimately futile exercise</li> <li>(C) it is ultimately futile</li> <li>(D) ultimate futility</li> </ul>	
5. To succeed in this business, you must be	e either talentedhard-working.
(A) or be	(B) or
(C) nor	(D) and
<ul><li>6. Not only is fruit cheap in Thailand</li><li>(A) but it also comes in many kinds</li><li>(B) but also in many kinds</li><li>(C) but also comes in many kinds</li><li>(D) and also kinds</li></ul>	
7. Oil painting began with the Flemish artisince ancient cavemen first dug out colored	
it with water.	(D) 1
(A) so	(B) and
(C) or	(D) but
8. Her boyfriend is tall, handsome, and _	
(A) intelligence	(B) Intelligent
(C) intelligently	(D) he is intelligent
9. They plan to shop the whole afternoon	and the evening through.
(A) dance	(B) dancing
(C) have danced	(D) will dancing
10. Not only but he also drinks heavily.	
(A) he smokes a lot	(B) he does smoke a lot
(C) does he smoke a lot	(D) does smoke a lot
<ul><li>11. The origin of "go" and was in ancient</li><li>(A) the place of its development</li><li>(B) it was developed</li></ul>	nt China.

<ul><li>(C) it was developed which</li><li>(D) the development was there</li></ul>			
<ul><li>12. Hawaii is famous for its spectacular volc</li><li>(A) pleasant</li><li>(C) its beaches are pleasant</li></ul>	canoes, friendly people, and  (B) to have pleasant beaches  (D) pleasant beaches		
13. When the eye of a typhoon passes through,low.	ough, the air is still, the humidity		
<ul><li>(A) with air pressure</li><li>(C) that the air pressure is</li></ul>	<ul><li>(B) air pressure being</li><li>(D) and the air pressure</li></ul>		
14. A password consisting of both letters guessed, be easily cracked by a decoding			
<ul><li>(A) nor can it</li><li>(C) nor it cannot</li></ul>	<ul><li>(B) and cannot it</li><li>(D) it cannot</li></ul>		
15. The police detective tried to find clues by and repeatedly questioning the suspect.			
(A) careful (C) he is careful	<ul><li>(B) carefully</li><li>(D) to be careful</li></ul>		
16. Meteorological satellites help make weather forecasts more accurate and			
— ·  (A) more reliably  (C) more reliable	<ul><li>(B) more reliability</li><li>(D) it is reliable</li></ul>		
17. Controlling the way you spend money is a budget than	often a more effective way to meet		
<ul><li>(A) try to make more money</li><li>(B) you try to make more money</li><li>(C) trying to make more money</li></ul>			
<ul><li>(D) you are trying to make more mor</li><li>18. Allowing children to make small decision</li></ul>	•		
to harmony, efficiency and	ons for themserves may continuate		
<ul><li>(A) happiness</li><li>(C) happily</li></ul>	<ul><li>(B) they are happy</li><li>(D) to happy</li></ul>		
19. Contrary to common belief, the pencil u			
(A) lead nor graphite	(B) but lead not graphite		

16.5 ANSWER 187

- (C) not lead but graphite
- (D) graphite but lead
- 20. Dr. Sun Yat-sen is remembered by Chinese \_\_ the Ching Dynasty but also for laying down the foundations for a new China.
  - (A) not only overthrew
  - (B) only not overthrew
  - (C) not only for overthrowing
  - (D) for not only overthrowing

#### 16.5 Answer

- 1. (C) not only 必须有 but also 配合使用。
- 2. (D) neither…nor 之间要求对称。nor 的右边是名词短语 the imposition of a totalitarianism (强加以集权统治), 最符合对称要求的是 D 中的名词短语 the devotion to militarism (奉献于军国主义)。
  - 3. (D) 上文有 not, 可看出下文要有 but, 来表示: "并非前者, 而是后者"。
- 4. (A) 对等连接词 and 要求对称。它前面的 destructive 和 wasteful 都是形容词, 所以后面也要选形容词(futile 是"徒劳的")。
- 5. (B) either 要和 or 配合使用,而且要求对称。talented 和 hard-working 都是形容词。
- 6. (A) not only 要与 but also 配合使用,而且要求对称。Not only 后面是一个从句,所以 but 后面也要选从句的构造,故选 A。
- 7. (D) 空格前后分别是一个完整的句子,这两句话的内容有相反之处,所以要选表示相反的对等连接词 but。
- 8. (B) 对等连接词 and 要求对称。tall、handsome 和 intelligent 都是形容词,可以对称。
  - 9. (A) and 右边用动词原形 dance 和左边的动词原形 shop 对称。
- 10. (C) Not only 移至句首时要用倒装句型。
- 11. (A) and 左边是名词 the origin, 右边也要求名词来对称, 故选 A。go 指"围棋", 源自日文。
- 12. (D) 同样是着眼于对称要求。只有 D 的 pleasant beaches 可以和 and 左边的 spectacular volcanoes 和 friendly people 对称。

- 13. (D) 未省略前是 the air is still, the humidity is high, and the air pressure is low 这三个以 and 连接的对等从句,省略掉重复的 be 动词之后即得出 D。
  - 14. (A) nor 置于句首时要用倒装句型。
  - 15. (B) and 的右边有副词 repeatedly, 因而左边选副词 carefully 来对称。
- 16. (C) 形容词 more reliable 可和形容词 more accurate 对称。
- 17. (C) 比较级也要求对称。比较的一方是动名词短语 controlling the way…,所以在 than 后面与它比较的另一方应选 C, trying to…也是动名词短语。
- 18. (A) 因为对等连接词 and 的要求,所以选名词 happiness 来和名词 harmony、efficiency 对称。
- 19. (C) not…but 表示"非前者,是后者"。铅笔用的不是铅,是石墨。
- 20. (C) 下文有 but also for…, 所以空格中要选 not only for…来配合。

# 第十七章 复合句

## 17.1 从句和领句

一方面,**复合句**像简单句, 因为它**只包含一个主要从句**; 但另一方面, 它**有一个或一个以上的从句作为它的句子成分**。

**从属和并列**相互结合可使句子更加复杂,结构更加多变。复合句的每一个主要从句可能包含一个或多个从句,而每个从句有可能包含自己的从句。

Although I admire her reasoning, <u>I reject her conclusion</u>.
 夸克使用**领句** (MATRIX clause) 来称呼去除了从句的主句。

## 17.2 限定性、非限定性动词和从句

## 17.2.1 限定性和非限定性动词

在英语语法中,动词可以分为限定性动词(finite verbs)和非限定性动词(non-finite verbs)。

**限定性动词** 受**主语、时态和语气**等因素影响的动词。这类动词 **可以独立构成谓语**, 可以明确表明时态、人称和数的不同。具体特点是:

时态明确 表示动作发生的时间(如过去、现在、将来)。

与主语一致 动词形式会随着主语的人称和数的不同而变化。

**可单独作为谓语** 在句子中, 限定性动词通常是谓语动词。且**必然是谓语动词中的第** 一个动词。

非限定性动词 不受时态、人称和数等因素影响的动词形式。它们不能单独作为句子的谓语,通常需要与其他动词搭配使用。有以下三种形式:

**不定式 (INFINITIVE)** 通常以 to 开头,如 to eat、to run。不带 to 的不定式谓语较少见,但也有:

• Rather than you do the job, I'd prefer to finish it myself.

分词 (PARTICIPLES) 包括现在分词 (eating) 和过去分词 (eaten)。 动名词 (GERUND) 动词加 -ing 构成, 具有名词的功能, 如 running。

#### 17.2.2 从句的结构类别

夸克认为从旬有三种主要的结构类型:

限定性从句 (FINITE CLAUSE) 谓语带有一个限定性动词短语的从句。

非限定性从句 (NONFINITE CLAUSE) 谓语带有一个非限定性动词的从句。

无动词从句 (VERBLESS CLAUSE) 不含动词成分, 但仍然可分析为从句成分的分句。如:

• Although  $\frac{\text{always}}{\text{A}}$   $\frac{\text{helpful}}{\text{V}}$ , he was not much liked.

## 17.3 从句的功能类别

根据从句的潜在功能,可将其分为四种主要类别:

- 名词从句 NOMINAL CLAUSES 功能类似于名词短语,可充当主语、宾语、补语、同位语和介词补语。
- **状语从句 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES** 功能方面更像是副词短语;但是在表达的明确性上,常常更像是介词短语。
- 关系从句 RELATIVE CLAUSES 功能上与修饰性形容词相同, 修饰名词短语; 位置上和后置修饰的介词相同。
  - a man who is lonely ~ a lonely man
  - tourists who come from Italy ~ tourists from Italy
- 比较从句 COMPARATIVE CLAUSES 在修饰功能上与形容词和副词相似;语义上比较从句和他们的关联词等同于程度副词。
  - She has more patience than you have.
  - He's not as clever a man as I thought.
  - I love you <u>more</u> deeply <u>than I can say</u>.

17.4 从属连词 191

## 17.4 从属连词

#### 根据夸克大全 14.11 续写

## 17.5 非限定性从句省略方法

由于**非限定性动词从句**(谓词为分词、不定式的句子,见 17.2 节)没有时态标记和情态助动词,又常常没有主语和从属连词;也可以**根据句子的语境来还原时态、语态、人称和数**,因此是一种很有价值的**压缩句子**的方法。

- When (*she was*) **questioned**, she denied being a member of the group.
- (*Since/Because/As they were*) Considered works of art, they were admitted into the country without customs duties.

它们被视为艺术品,被准许免关税进入该国。

在上下文中找不到与名词性成分指称的联系时,那么主语可能是**不确定主语**或是**说** 话者。

- **To be an administrator** is to have the worst job in the world. [(For) a person]
- It's hard work <u>to be a student</u>. [不确定主语,根据上下文而定,如: (for) anyone]
- It's hard work <u>to be honest</u>. [不确定主语,根据上下文而定]

助动词 have 有时用在 to 不定式中 (to have happened) 或 -ing 分词中 (having happened),前者更能表示未来时间或不确定性。

## 17.6 无动词从句省略方法

SVC, SVA 两种句型中,其中 V 为系动词且无实际意义,因此常常可以**省去系动词** V,成为无动词从句。

• Seventy-three people have drowned in the area, many of them  $(\underline{are})$  children.

drown 意思是溺水,被动主动形式皆可。

- Mary sat in the front seat, her hands (were) in her lap.
  - 如果可以根据上下文还原主语,也可省去主语。
- Whether  $(\underline{he\ is})$  right or wrong, he always comes off worst in argument.

- One should avoid taking a trip abroad in August where (it is) possible.
- We can meet again tomorrow, if (**it is**) necessary.
- With the children ( $\underline{are}$ ) at school, we can't take our vacations when we want to.

with-可用在(不带 to 的不定式以外的)非限定性从句之前,副词词性,意思是 "因为;尽管",表明从句为状语从句。

## 17.7 时间性 since- 从句的完成时

当整个结构指持续到现在 (可能也包括现在) 的一段时间时, **时间性 since-从句**一般使用**一般过去时或现在完成时**, **领句**则一般使用**现在完成时**。中国大学英语教育之前, 基本上只考这一条规则。

- I have lost ten pounds since I started swimming.
- Since <u>leaving</u> home, Larry has written to his parents just once.
   上句中 leaving 其实是 she left 的省略转化。
- Max has been tense since he's been taking drugs.
- I'v had a dog ever since I've owned a house.

  如果整个时间段都在过去,那么领句和从句都使用过去完成时或一般过去时:
- Since he <u>knew(had known)</u> her, she was(had been) a journalist.
   关于领句的一般规则也有某些例外,如:
- it 表时间方面 It's ten years since they were live here.
  - How long <u>is it</u> since you last spoke to Jack.
- 表情态 They <u>won't</u> smoke (ever) since they saw a film on lung cancer.
  - (Ever) Since my teeth were pulled out I <u>can't</u> eat anything solid.

英语是世俗流变的, 而非学院派的, 不要教条。其实非正式文体中, 越来越多 since-对应主句使用非完成体。

## 17.8 其他时间从句的完成时

如同 since-, 当 after- 从句或 when- 从句指两个**过去时间的顺序**时,时间从句中的动词可能使用**过去完成时**,尽管**一般过去时**更常见。

• We ate our meal <u>after/when</u> we (had) returned from the game.

如果时间从句和条件从句指的是**将来时间的顺序**时(时间从句中的事件发生在将来,而领句中的事件发生在将来的将来),那么句中使用**现在完成时**是很普遍的:

- When they've scored their next goal, we'll go home. [等得分后回家]
- After they have left, we can smoke. [等他们离开后抽烟]

## 17.9 直接引语和间接引语

直接引语 direct speech, 援引他人的话或文字。

间接引语 reported speech, 以第三者的身份转述他人的话或文字。

直接引语转为间接引语时,产生的动词变化关系被称作**时态呼应**。另外一定注意**人称变化**。

如果转述的时间在原话之后,那么一般需要改变动词形式,这种变化被称作**时态后 移**(见表 17.1)。

直接引语	间接引语	
一般现在	一般过去	
一般过去	一般过去或过去完成	
现在/过去完成	过去完成	

表 17.1: 直接引语到间接引语的时态后移

#### 时态后移的例子:

- Paul said, "<u>I'm felling</u> ill."
   Paul said <u>(that) he was felling</u> ill.
- Anna said, "<u>I've lost</u> my phone." [I've = I have]
   Anna said (that) she'd lost her phone.' [she'd = she had]
- Lucy said, "<u>I can speak</u> English."
   Lucy said <u>that she could speak</u> English.

如果原来的时间指示关系在转述时依然有效,那么时态后移就不是必需的。例如:

- Their teacher had told them that the earth **moves** around the sun.
- Sam told me last night that he is now an American citizen.
- I didn't know that our meeting **is** next Tuesday.

194 第十七章 复合句

### 17.10 间接陈述句、疑问句、感叹句和祈使句

所有的语句类型都可变为间接引语,转变连接词见表 17.2。

表 17.2: 间接句型及其连接词

句子类型	从句类型
间接陈述句	that- 从句
间接疑问句	wh- 从句
间接感叹句	wh- 从句
间接祈使句	that- 或 to- 不定式从句(无主语).

a 间接祈使句不带主语

- "Are you ready yet?" asked Joan. [yes-no 疑问句]
   Joan asked (me) whether I was ready yet.
- "When will the plane leave?" I wondered. [Wh-疑问句] I asked her **when** the plane would leave.
- "Are you tired or not?" I asked her. [选择疑问句]
   I asked her whether or not she was tired.
- "What a brave boy you are!" Margaret told him. [感叹句]
   Margaret told him what a brave boy he was.
- "Clean your teeth at once," Leo said to his son. [祈使句]
   Leo told to his son to clean the teeth at once. [间接祈使句]
   Leo insisted that his son clean the teeth at once. [间接祈使句, 命令性虚拟语气]

Leo **insisted on** his son **cleaning** the teeth at once. [间接祈使句]

• "Sit down!" [祈使句]
She said for us to sit down.

# 第十八章 名词从句

### 18.1 名词从句分类

名词从句可分为6大类:

- 1. that-从句,也称陈述从句
- 2. 疑问从句
- 3. 感叹从句
- 4. 名词性关系从句
- 5. to- 不定式从句
- 6. -ing 从句

名词从句可用 it 或 that 作代用式。

### 18.2 名词性 that- 从句

名词性 that-从句(也叫陈述从句)所承担的功能有:

主语 That he passed the exam surprised everyone.

That you don't know Chinese is a pity.

作为主语的 that-从句中, that 不可省略, 否则句子结构混乱、易产生歧义,。

直接宾语 I believe that she will come.

主语补语 The truth is that they are moving to another city.

形容词补足语 I'm glad that you are so friendly.

同位语 The reason she gave, that he didn't notice the car till too late, is unsatisfactory.

that 的省略在简短、不复杂的从句中尤为常见。但在一些容易产生歧义的情况下, that 不可省略:除上文所述作为主语的 that 以外,还有以下情况:

- They told us once again that the situation was serious.
   他们再次告诉我们、形势严峻。
- They told us that once again the situation was serious.
   他们告诉我们,形势再次严峻。
   以上两句中的 that 是为说明状语 once again 的归属。
- <u>I realize that I'm in charge</u> and <u>that everybody accepts my leadership</u>. 我意识到我是领导人,每人都接受我的领导。 两个 that 说明前后两个句子为**并列关系**,方便断句。
- I realize that I'm in charge and everybody accepts my leadership. 我意识到,我是领导人并且每人都接受我的领导。
- That she ever said such a thing I simply don't believe.

# 18.3 wh- 疑问从句

从属 wh- 名词性关系从句具有名词性 that- 从句的所有功能而且还可充当介词补足语。疑问从句中的 wh-词及其词性见(表 18.1)。

表 18.1: 疑问句与疑问从句的 wh- 词及其词性

疑问代词	whose	what	which	who	whom
限定词	whose	what	which		

wh-疑问从句可以作的句子成分有:

主语 How the book will sell depends on the readers.

直接宾语 I can't imagine what they want with your address.

主语补语 The problem is who will water my plants when I am away.

同位语 Your question, why did the leak occur, remains unanswered.

也可以不用同位语:

Your question of why did the leak occur remains unanswered.

形容词补足语 I'm not sure which she prefers.

介词补足语 They did not consult us on how to do this work.

# 18.4 名词性 yes-no 和选择疑问句

Yes-no 从句由从属连词 whether 或 if 引导:

• Do you know whether/if the banks are open?

选择疑问句由关联词 whether ... or 或 if ... or 构成。

• I can't find out <u>whether/if</u> the flight has been deLÁYED <u>or whether/if</u> it has been CÀNcelled.

如果第二个选择部分是一个完整的从句,如上句的 it has been cancelled,那么从属连词 whether/if 要重复。

但第二个选择是完整从句的情况少见,一般倾向于省略,如:

- I can't find out <u>if</u> the flight has been deLÁYED <u>or</u> CÀNcelled.
- They didn't say whether it will RÁIN or be SÙNny.
   if 从句相比 whether 有较多限制。

不能做主语 Whether/If she likes the present is not clear to me.

不能做补语 My problem is whether/if I should ask for another loan.

不能做介词补足语 It all depends on whether/if they will support us.

不能引导 **to** 不定式 He didn't tell us whether/# to wait for him or (to) go on without him.

### 18.5 名词性关系从句

wh-名词性关系从句也叫自由关系从句或者独立关系从句。

wh- 名词性关系从句和 wh- 疑问从句相似,因为它们也由一个 wh- 成分引导,如 where, how, when(ever), who(ever), what(ever), which(ever), 但**没有先行词**(这也是他们被称为自由或独立关系从句的原因)。在很多方面,它们更像是**名词短语**。

由于间接宾语一般指人,因此只有名词性关系从句是唯一可作间接宾语的从句。

其实我们可以将 名词性关系从句改写为泛指的名词中心词 + 形容词性关系从句样式的名词短语。

主语 Whoever did that should admit if frankly.

The person who did that

Whatever book you see is yours to take.

The books (that) you see

主语补语 The autumn is when the leaves fall . the time (that) leaves fall

直接宾语 I took what books she gave me. the books (that) she gave me

间接宾语 He gave whoever asked for it a copy of his latest article.

形容词性关系从句不能做间接宾语,因此不能改写本句。

宾语补语 You can call me whatever you like any name (that) you like

介词补语 You should vote for whichever candidate you think the best any candidate (that) you think the best

如同名词短语, 名词性关系从句做形容词补语时要求有介词:

• He's aware of what I write.

wh-成分可以表达一个**具体的** (不能使用后缀 -ever) 或是**非具体的** (一般使用后缀 -ever) 意思。

具体的:

- I took what was on the kitchen table.
- May is when she takes her last examination.

非具体的:

Whoever breaks this law deserves to be locked up.
 违反这项法律的人应被监禁。

• I'll send whatever is necessary.

我会发送任何必要的东西

**在名词性关系从句中必须 wh- 词在前、介词在后**,与疑问从句不同。我觉得这倒容易理解,因为名词性从句的重点是名词,介词如果放在前面,词性词义和侧重点都会不同。

- They ate **what** they paid **for**.
- Whoever they lend the money to must be trustworthy.

## 18.6 名词性 to 不定式从句

to 不定式从句有如下功能:

18.7 名词性 -ING 从句 199

主语 To be neutral in this conflict is impossible.

直接宾语 He likes to relax.

主语补语 The best excuse is to say that you have an examination tomorrow.

同位语 Your dreamer, to become a farmer, requires the energy and perseverance.

形容词补语 I'm very glad to meet her.

在一个 to- 不定式从句中出现主语时, 通常需要主语前面有 for:

- For us to take part in the discussion would be a conflict of interest.
- I'm very eager for them to meet her.

如果不定式从句作宾语,并且还有宾语补语,那么不定式从句必须外置。以下例句中 it 是虚位宾语,不定式从句外置,其实是真正的宾语。

- I think V O C (for me) to leave at once. 外置宾语
- They consider <u>it</u> their duty <u>to speak to his parents</u>.

名词性 to-不定式从句带有不定式本身表示**可能性或建议**的意味,而不是某种业已完成的事情,接近带有推定意义的 that ... should 从句。

- It's natural **for them to be together**.
- It's natural <u>that they should be together</u>.

用 have 完成体时可以指业已发生的情况。

• I'm happy to have met you.

## 18.7 名词性 -ing 从句

-ing 从句有如下功能:

主语 Watching television makes them always happy. 直

主语补语 Her first job had been selling computers.

直接宾语 He enjoys playing football.

同位语 The children, <u>laughing and playing in the park</u>, enjoyed their day off from school.

形容词补足语 They are busy preparing a barbecue.

介词补足语 James is busy practising for the school concert.

如前所述,如果-ing 从句有主语,那么 -ing 的主语可以是属格或宾格(代词有宾格)或其他名词短语通格:

- I object to **his/Jim's receiving** an invitation. [object to doing sth,可在 -ing 前加属格]
- I object to <a href="mailto:him/Jim receiving">him/Jim receiving</a> an invitation. [object to sb doing sth, sb 是宾格]

我反对他/Jim 接受邀请。

• My forgetting her name was embarrassing.

等同于:

I was embarrassed because/that I forgot her name.

I, who forgot her name, was embarrassed.

[名词性 -ing 从句可用来指一个**事实或行动**,这里的 -ing 其实是连接词 + 过去式的简化:去掉连接词,过去式变现在分词]

• Your driving a car to New York in your condition disturbs me greatly. 你这种情况下开车去纽约让我很不安。

### 18.8 不带 to 的不定式从句

名词性不带 to 的不定式功能极为有限,一般在假拟分裂句(祥见 25.3 节)中作为主语或主语补语。

**主语 Turn off the tap** was what I did. [少见且非正式]

主语补语 What the plan does is <u>(to) ensure a fair pension for all</u>. [to 可省可不省]

### **18.9** Test

请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

1. Although Columbus knew the earth was round, he could not imagine \_\_\_

.

18.9 TEST 201

(A) how was it large	(B) how large it was
(C) of what large it was	(D) of that what size
2 in the stratosphere is depleted is no	t completely understood.
(A) How ozone	(B) While ozone
(C) Ozone	(D) Ozone that
3. It is believed into modern birds.	
(A) that pterosaurs evolved	(B) what pterosaurs were evolved
(C) it was pterosaurs evolved	(D) pterosaurs that were evolved
4. The fact the forests of North Americ	ca are shrinking almost as fast as are
those of the Amazon Basin is largely ignore	ed by the American people.
(A) of	(B) which
(C) is that	(D) that
5. The report some birds guide Africa	n natives to honeybee hives was for
a long time discredited by the scientific com	nmunity.
(A) why	(B) which
(C) what	(D) that
6. Riding the rapids down the Colorado,	Captain Powell was determined to
prove could be traversed.	
(A) the Grand Canyon it	(B) that in the Grand Canyon
(C) how in the Grand Canyon	(D) that the Grand Canyon
7. She wouldn't tell me she saw there	
(A) what	(B) that
(C) which	(D) how
8. Quantum physicists are interested in	tiny particles move.
(A) what	(B) which
(C) how	(D) that
9 after lying dormant for hundreds of	f years is hard to believe.
(A) It is seeds that can sprout	(B) Seeds can sprout
(C) That seeds can sprout	(D) Sprouting seeds
10. Whether she can do the job depends of	n how well prepared
(A) is she	(B) can she
(C) she is	(D) she can

11. After comparing the two answer sheets	s, the teacher came to the conclusion
in the exam.	
(A) is the students cheated	
(B) which is the students that cheat	red
(C) that the students cheated	
(D) what the students cheated	
12. Scientists believe made the moon a	as cold as it is.
(A) that an atmosphere is absent	
(B) that the absence of an atmospher	ere
(C) what was the absence an atmos	phere
(D) an atmosphere is absent	
13 is decided by the ecological role that	at it plays.
(A) An animal sees well	(B) Whether an animal sees well
(C) Does an animal see well	(D) So an animal sees well
14. Analysts agree is too much "hot mo	ney" circulating in the stock market.
(A) what	(B) which
(C) that	(D) that there
15. Have you wondered whether too la	ate to change your job?
(A) it is	(B) is it
(C) that it is	(D) is
16 is impossible to tell now.	
(A) When will it snow	(B) Whether will snow
(C) When it snows	(D) Whether it will snow
17. Such an opportunity,, comes only	once in a lifetime.
(A) the salesman says	(B) that the salesman says
(C) which says the salesman	(D) what the salesman says
18. Many voters are concerned may no	ot be able to deliver on his promises.
(A) over the candidate	(B) with the candidate
(C) that the candidate	(D) the candidate that
19. I find that he didn't take the money	у.
(A) to believe hard	(B) it to believe hard
(C) it hardly to believe	(D) it hard to believe

18.10 ANSWER 203

20. Babylon is \_\_ Baghdad.

(A) that is now

(B) what now

(C) what is now

(D) that now

### **18.10 Answer**

1. (B) 空格部分是 imagine 的宾语位置。答案 B 是由疑问句产生的名词从句,可以作宾语使用。

- 2. (A) 后面接连出现 is depleted 和 is not understood 这两个动词短语,表示应有两个从句。答案 A 以 How ozone in the stratosphere is depleted (臭氧层中的臭氧如何枯竭) 这个疑问句产生的名词从句作为主语,后面的 is not completely understood (并不完全清楚) 就成为主要从句的动词。
- 3. (A) It 是个虚字,应代表一个 that 引导的名词从句,故选 A: "人们认为翼手龙演化成了现代的鸟类。"
  - 4. (D) 主要从句是 The fact…is largely ignored by the American people.

这件事大致被美国人忽略。空格后面的从句 the forests of North America are shrinking fast…(北美的森林在迅速萎缩……)是完整的简单句,前面加上 that 即成为名词从句,作为 the fact 的同位语,故选 D。

5. (D) 主要从句是 The report…was for a long time discredited by the scientific community.

这项报告……有很长一段时间不被科学界采信。空格后面那句 some birds guide African natives to honeybee hives(有些鸟类引导非洲土著找到蜂窝)是个完整的简单句,前面加上 that 就成为名词从句,当作 the report 的同位语使用,故选 D。

- 6. (D) 空格以下是动词 prove 的宾语位置。答案 D 的 that the Grand Canyon could be traversed (大峡谷可以穿越) 是个名词从句,可以作宾语用。
- 7. (A) 空格以下是动词 tell 的宾语位置。答案 A 的 what she saw there 可以视为疑问句 What did she see there? 作出来的名词从句,可作为宾语。
- 8. (C) 空格是介词 in 的宾语位置,应使用名词类。答案 C 的 how tiny particles move (小粒子如何移动) 可视为由疑问句 How do tiny particles move? 作出来的名词从句, 所以可以放在介词 in 的后面 (等于省略掉 the question 量子物理学家是对"问题"有兴趣)。
  - 9. (C) 主要从句的句型是 Something is hard to believe. 它的动词 is 表示出主语

必须是单数。答案 C 是个名词从句: That seeds can sprout after lying dormant for thousands of years (种子休眠几千年后还能发芽这件事),可以作 is 的主语。

- 10. (C) 在 depends on 之后的部分又是一个问题: How well prepared is she? 改成名词从句即成为 how well prepared she is. 故选 C。
- 11. (C) 空格以下的部分是 conclusion 一字的同位语,应使用 that 引导的名词从句,故选 C。
- 12. (B) 空格以下是动词 believe 的宾语, 其中已经有动词, 所以前面需要一个主语以及连接词 that 构成名词从句, 才可以当宾语用, 故选 B。
- 13. (B) 空格部分是动词 is decided 前面的主语部分。既然是需要 decided 的事情,表示应该用疑问句改造的名词从句,故选 B。
- 14. (D) 从前面的 Analysts agree (分析家认为)来看,接下来应该是一个叙述某种看法的名词从句(以 that 引导),而不是疑问句形态的名词从句(以疑问词引导),故选D。
- 15. (A) 自 whether 以下是疑问句改造的名词从句,作为动词 wonder 的宾语,故选A。
- 16. (D) 空格部分应选择一个由疑问句改造的名词从句,来当作动词 is 的主语使用, 故 选 D。C 的 when it snows 解释为 "下雪的时候",是状语从句,不能作主语。
- 17. (A) 空格置于两个逗号之间,是一个非限制性修饰语(详见??)。这个句子可以视为一个间接引句,空格中的部分用来介绍说这句话的人,故选 A。
- 18. (C) 空格以下是一个 that 引导的名词从句,已经有动词 may not be,所以只缺 that 和主语,故选 C。
- 19. (D) 空格后面的 that 从句是名词从句,被往后移动,而以虚词 it 暂代这个从句来作动词 find 的宾语。而 hardly 是几乎不的意思,应选 hard 表示"困难地",故选 D。
- 20. (C) 先从这句来了解: Babylon is the place that is now Baghdad.

巴比伦就是今天叫做巴格达的地方。that 从句是关系从句,如果要省略掉 that 的 先行词 the place,就得把 that 换成另一个关系词 what,即成为 C 的答案。

# 第十九章 状语从句

状语从句的语义分析比较复杂,因为**同一个从属连词所引导的从句意思可能不同**,而且这样的情形为数不少。例如, since 从句可以是时间从句,也可以是原因分句。**另外**,有些从句把两层意思结合起来。

### 19.1 状语从句的从属连接词

作时间状语的 ing 从句由以下从属连词引导: once, till, until, when, whenever, while 和 whilst, as soon/long as:

- Once having made a promise, you should keep it.
- The dog stayed at the entrance until told to come in.
- Complete your work as soon as possible.

带有 until- 从句的主句必须是持续性的,时间持续到 until-从句的时间为止。因为事件未发生的状态是持续性的,所以否定从句总是持续性的,即使相应的肯定从句并非如此。例如:

- I <u>didn't</u> start my meal <u>until</u> Adam arrived. [正确]
- I <u>started</u> my meal <u>until</u> Adam arrived. [错误]

地点从句主要由 where 和 wherever 引导, where 是具体的, wherever 是非具体的。

- Where the fire had been, we saw nothing but blackened ruins.
- They went wherever they could find work. [to any place where]

本笔记对状语较少描述,以后可从 The Gramma Book 等简明书籍中摘录。

### 19.2 状语从句与并列从句的比较

请看下例:

- Because<br/>从属连接词he needs the money,<br/>状语从句he works hard.<br/>主要从句因为他缺钱,所以他勤奋工作。
- He needs the money,<br/>对等从句and<br/>并列连接词he works hard.<br/>并列从句他需要钱,也勤奋工作。

例 1 是分成主、从的复句结构。其中状语从句 he needs the money 和主要从句 he works hard 分别都是完整、独立的简单句,以一个连接词连起来。这和例 2 中两个并列从句的情形完全相同。唯一的差别是并列从句使用并列连接词(例 2 中的 and),连接起来的两个从句地位相等,没有主从之分,也不需互相解释。

状语从句则使用从属连接词(例 1 中的 because),使得 because he needs the money 成为从属地位的从句,当作副词使用,用来修饰主要从句中的动词 works(交待 works hard 的原因)。

### 19.3 状语从句与名词从句的比较

状语从句和名词从句就有较大的差别了。请看下例:

- The witness<br/>Ssaid<br/>Vthat<br/>连接词he saw the whole thing.证人说他目睹了事情发生的全过程。
- Z.The witness<br/>Ssaid<br/>Vthis,<br/>Othough<br/>连接词he didn't really see it.<br/>状语从句证人这样说,尽管他没有真正看到。

先来观察一下名词从句和状语从句的共同点。首先,两者原来都是完整、独立的简单句(例 1 中的 He saw the whole thing 与例 2 中的 He didn't really see it)。然后,两者都是加上从属连接词构成从句,但是由此开始有了差别。名词从句加的连接词是that,表示"那件事情",此外没有别的意义。状语从句加的连接词,如例 2 的 though,以及上节例子中的 because 等等,都是有意义的连接词,表达两句话之间的逻辑关系:though 表示让步,because 表示原因,if 表示条件。使用的连接词不同,一个有意义,一个没有意义,这是状语从句和名词从句第一个重要的差别。

第二个差别是:名词从句属于名词类,要放在主要从句中的名词位置使用,状语从句则不然。例 1 中主要从句 The witness said 部分尚不完整,在及物动词 said 之后还要有个名词当宾语,构成 S+V+O 的句型才算完成。取一个独立的简单句 He saw the whole thing 外加上没有意义的连接词 that,造成一个名词从句,就可以放入主要从句 The witness said 后面的宾语位置使用,成为例 1 的形状。

状语从句情况不同。**它是修饰语的词类,要附在一个完整的主要从句上作修饰语使用**。如例 2 He didn't really see it 是完整的单句,外面加上表示让步的连接词 though 构成状语从句。主要从句 The witness said this 已经是完整的句子(S+O+V),把副词从句 though he didn't really see it 直接附上去,当作副词,用来修饰动词 said。因为两个从句都是完整的简单句,所以说其间的关系**很像并列从句**的关系。这是状语从句与名词从句第二个重要的差别。

### 19.4 非限定状语从句和无动词状语从句

- 独立从句 具有一个明显的主语但不用从属连词引导的非限定性从句和无动词从句。之所以成为独立从句是因为它们在句法上显然并不与主句绑定在一起。独立从句可以是 -ing, -ed 或无动词从句。
  - **No further discussion a rising**, the meeting was brought to a close.
  - Lunch finished, the guests retired to the lounge.
  - Christmas then only days away, the family was pent up with excitement.

非限定从句和无动词从句中**没有主语时**,用以识别主语的依附规则是,**认为母句的 主语就是其主语**:

- The oranges, when (they are) ripe, are picked and sorted mechanically.
- <u>Driving home after work</u>, I accidentally went through a red light. [While I was driving home after work]
- <u>To climb the rock face</u>, we had to take various precautions. [So that we could climb]

某些情况下,依附规则是不适用的,或者说至少是不严格的:

#### 从句是一个主语外接状语,这时隐含的主语是说话者 |

Putting it mildly, you have caused us some inconvenience.

#### 隐含的主语是整个主句

I'll help you <u>if necessary</u>. [... if it is necessary]

#### 隐含的主语是一个不定代词或支撑词 it

When dining in the restaurant, a jacket and tie are required. [When one dines]

Being Christmas, the government offices were closed. [Since it was]

没有从属连词引导的状语从句和无动词从句被称为增补从句,根据上下文,我们可 以用其表示时间、条件、原因、让步或状况关系。对读者或听者来说,这种伴随关系的 实质是从语境中推断的。

- **Reaching** the river, we pitched camp for the night. When we Reached
- a nun, spent much of her time in prayer and meditation. • Julia, since she was
- The sentence is ambiguous, (if / when it is) taken out of context.
- We spoke face to face.

longer \_\_ the rain is over.

#### 19.5 **Test**

<b>责选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子</b>	完整。
1. Please come back you finish yo	our work.
(A) as soon as	(B) as soon as possible
(C) as possibly soon	(D) as soon possible
2. Which of the following is correct?	
(A) He is very smart; moreover,	he is diligent.
(B) He is very smart, moreover,	he is diligent.
(C) He is very smart, Moreover,	he is diligent.
(D) He is very smart; and more	over, he is diligent.
3. It is not safe to get off a car	
(A) unless it is in motion	
(B) until it has come to a stop	
(C) after you have opened the v	vindow
(D) before the traffic light turns	red
4. If you sell your rice now, you will	be playing your hand very badly. Wait
_ the price goes up.	
(A) until	(B) still
(C) for	(D) that
5. (The rain is over. You must not s	tay any longer.) You must not stay any

(A)	when	(B) that
(C)	now that	(D) as for
6. It is su	ıch a good opportunity you sho	ould not miss it.
(A)	as	(B) that
(C)	which	(D) of which
7. Tom is	s dull. He works hard. He will sure	ely pass the exam.
(A)	Though Tom is dull, he works so exam.	hard that he will surely pass the
(B)	Despite his dullness, Tom will sure	ely pass the exam by work hard.
(C)	Tom will surely pass the exam bullness.	because he works hard with his
(D)	Dull as Tom is, he will surely pass	the exam with work hard.
8. She ha	ad worked several years she cou	ld continue her studies in France.
(A)	as	(B) while
(C)	before	(D) then
9 , he	e never begged for money.	
(A)	Despite he was poor	(B) Because he was poor
(C)	Poor as he was	(D) In spite of he was poor
10 the	typhoon warnings, several fishing	boats set sail.
(A)	Because	(B) According
(C)	Despite	(D) Although
11. I knev	v I would never have what I needed	d it myself.
(A)	even made	(B) without me making
(C)	except making	(D) unless I made
12. Which	n of the following is correct?	
(A)	I shall either go back to Taiwan or	my family will come to England.
(B)	I shall go back either to Taiwan or	my family will come to England.
(C)	Either I shall go back to Taiwan or	my family will come to England.
13 un	willing to do so, he had to follow th	ne traditional ways.
	After	(B) Although
(C)	Since	(D) Once

14. Which of the following is correct?

(A) Not only the money bu	ıt also three paintings was stolen.
(B) Not only the money bu	ıt also three paintings were stolen.
(C) Not only the money w	as stolen but also were the paintings.
15. No one was sure was goin	ng to happen.
(A) what	(B) who
(C) when	(D) where
16 she studied hard, but she	didn't succeed.
(A) Though	(B) Although
(C) Indeed	(D) While
17. "You seem angry at Martha."	" "I am I'm concerned, she can go away
forever."	
(A) As like as	(B) As many as
(C) As such as	(D) As far as
18. I'm going to tell you the num	nber once more, you forget.
(A) don't	(B) that
(C) so that	(D) lest
19. The mother's warning ti	here be no contact with boys was generally
ignored.	
(A) which	(B) that
(C) if	(D) wherever
20. Don't go away you have t	old me what actually happened.
(A) since	(B) then
(C) after	(D) until
19.6	6 Answer

- 1. (A) 空格前后分别是完整的独立从句,中间只需要连接词,如 A,把后面的从句改为副词从句。B 的 as soon as possible 已经是一个从句(as soon as it is possible 的简化),不再是连接词。C 和 D 都不是完整的连接词。
- 2. (A) moreover 是副词,不具连接词的语法功能,所以要用分号(;)来取代连接词。
- 3. (B) 四个答案在语法上都对, 句意则只有 B 合理: "除非车子停稳了, 否则下车不安全。"

19.6 ANSWER 211

4. (A) wait 一词构成一个祈使句,与右边的 the price goes up 之间要有连接词,故可排除非连接词的 B。答案 D 的 that 会把从句变成名词从句,不合词类要求。C 的 for可以当连接词,不过要解释为 because,在此不通,只有 A 这个连接词是引导时间状语从句用的,符合要求。

- 5. (C) now that 解释为"既然", 符合原意。
- 6. (B) 上文有 such, 因而要有 that 来配合, 表示因果关系。
- 7. (A) 句一和句二有相反关系,句二和句三有因果关系,因而分别用 though 和 so …that 来连接。B 中的 by work hard 错在以动词 work 直接放在介词后面。C 中的 he works hard with his dullness 句意十分牵强。D 与 B 相同,也是错在把动词(work)直接放在介词(with)后面。
- 8. (C) had worked 是过去完成时, could continue 是过去一般体, 这是时间先后顺序, 因而用 before。
- 9. (C) Though he was poor 可改写为 Poor as he was, 注意连接词现在要用 as。 A 和 D 都是**错用介词(despite 和 in spite of)来引导从句**。B 的句型正确,但逻辑关系不通顺。
  - 10. (C) 名词短语 the typhoon warnings 前面应有介词(只有 C 是)。
- 11. (D) 空格中要表示"条件",因而 C 不适合。A 多一个动词,文法错误。B 应该省略掉与主语重复的 me。D 是以 unless 的状语从句表示条件,符合要求。
- 12. (C) either 和 or 之间的部分要和 or 之后的部分对称。符合条件的只有 C (从句对从句), 其余答案在词类上都不对称。
- 13. (B) unwilling 和 had to 意思上相反,只有 although 可表示相反的关系。答案 B 是 although he was unwilling…的简化。
- 14. (B) not only 和 but also 亦要求对称。A 虽然有对称,但是动词 was 和主语 three paintings 在单复数上有冲突,而 C 中应倒装的是 not only was the money stolen,不是后面的从句。
- 15. (A) 这个位置要用连接词, 又要能当 was 的主语, 所以要用关系代词类 (A 或 B)。 因为它前面没有先行词, 不能用 who, 只能用 what, 故选 A。 what was going to happen 亦可作疑问句类的名词从句看待。
- 16. (C) 两个从句间已有连接词 but, 不能再用连接词  $(A \setminus B \cap D \cap B)$ , 只剩下一个副词类的  $(A \setminus B \cap B)$ 
  - 17. (D) 这个位置要用连接词。D 是表示限度的从属连接词,符合要求。B 的 as many

212 第十九章 状语从句

as 则要配合复数名词才能使用。

18. (D) 这个位置要用连接词,故排除 A。B 会造成名词从句,不合句型要求。C 和 D 都是状语从句连接词,但只有 D 的 lest (以免……)符合逻辑关系。

- 19. (B) 从下文的 there be no contact···来看,是间接祈使句语气,应为名词从句,故选择 B。
  - 20. (D) 这个位置连接两个从句,要用连接词(A、C或D),从意思判断用D较合理。

# 第二十章 关系副词从句

### 20.1 关系副词从句与状语从句的区别

在英语语法中,关系副词从句 (RELATIVE ADVERB CLAUSES) 和状语从句是两种不同类型的从句,它们在结构和功能上有显著的区别。

- 关系副词从句 关系副词从句是由关系副词引导的,从句中的成分通常用来修饰前面的先行词,起到定语的作用。常见的关系副词包括 when (时间)、where (地点)和why (原因)。例如:
  - I remember the day when we first met." (我记得我们第一次见面的那天。)
  - Sam knows the place where we're meeting and the time when we're meeting, but he doesn't know the reason why we're meeting.
  - The percentage of working adults is at its lowest level since 1983, when women were still entering the workforce.

自 1983 年妇女不断加入劳动大军以来,成年人就业率处于最低水平。 **关系副词从句也可以是非限制性修饰语、与领句之间用逗号隔开**。

- **状语从句** 状语从句是用来**修饰动词、形容词或其他副词**的,从句通常表示**时间、地点、原因、条件等**,起到**状语**的作用。它可以由多种连接词引导,如 because(因为)、if (如果)、when(当……时)等(见上一章)。例如:
  - I will call you when I arrive. (我到达时会给你打电话。)
  - <u>If it rains tomorrow</u>, we will stay indoors. (如果明天下雨,我们就待在室内。)

### 20.2 关系副词与介词短语的替代

**非正式文体中,关系副词可被介词 + 关系代词组成的介词短语替代**,引导后面的句子:

```
where prep + which + [place]when prep + which + [time]why prep + which + [reason]例句:
```

• Sam knows the time at which we're meeting, but he doesn't know the reason for which we're meeting.

另外, 副词 how 也可被类似介词短语替代:

**how** prep + which + [manner/way]

# 第二十一章 形容词性关系从句

### 21.1 形容词性关系从句和关系副词从句的异同

一般我们说关系从句时,就是指形容词性关系从句。它修饰先行词,提供关于先行词表示的人或实体的更多信息。

在现代语法中,形容词性关系分句和关系副词分句都是用来**修饰名词或代词等**的从句。按理说,关系副词从句也可归为形容词性关系从句,但为了减少语法混乱,我们将之单独并列。两者的异同有:

- 形容词性关系分句 指由关系代词(如 who, which, that 等)引导的从句,通常用于限制或定义先行詞,使其意义更加明确。。例如: The book that I read was fascinating.
- 关系副词分句 由关系副词(如 when, where, why 等)引导的从句。这类从句也用于修饰名词或代词,但其主要功能是提供时间、地点或原因等背景信息,不一定改变先行名詞的基本含义。例如: I remember **the day when we met**. 在这个例子中,"when we met"是一个关系副词分句,用于修饰"the day"。

如前言所述,国内语法多用定语从句这个概念,可以简单粗暴认为:

定语从句 = 形容词性关系从句(见第二十一章)+关系副词从句(见第二十章)

### 21.2 限制性和非限制性关系分句

可根据关系从句与其先行词的关系,将之分为限制性和非限制性两种。

- **限制性关系分句** 限制性关系分句用来**限定或明确其修饰的名词或代词**,提供关键性的信息。如果去掉限制性修饰语,句子的意思就不完整,或者会导致误解。它**不需要用 逗号隔开**,因为这些信息对理解句子至关重要。在阅读时,限制性修饰语通常紧跟 在其所修饰的名词(先行词)之后,**没有间隔停顿**。
  - Come and see my **younger** daughter.

younger 暗示是说话者两个女儿中的小女儿,是确定的,是限制性修饰语,也被称为"定语"。

- The students **who study hard** will pass the exam.
- I need the book **that you borrowed from the library**. 上两句起限制性关系分句作用的从句也被叫做**限制性修饰语**。

**非限制性关系分句** 非限制性关系分句提供的是**附加的、非关键性的信息**。即使去掉这些修饰语,句子的基本意思仍然成立。通常**用逗号隔开**,因为信息不重要。

• My brother , who lives in New York, is coming to visit.

这句是非限制性修饰语。

当名词短语中心语确定无疑义时(如专有名词、人名、隐含或明示的特指),其任何 修饰语都将是非限制性的。

- Mary Smith, who is in the corner, wants to meet you.
- Come and meet my **beautiful** wife. [一夫一妻制度下]
- He likes dogs, which surprises me.
   如上, 非名词性先行词不可能带有非限制性修饰语:
- I won't see <u>anyone</u>, <u>who has not made an appointment</u>. [误,可以去修饰语前后的逗号,转限制性从句]

非断定的中心词如 any- 等不能有非限制性关系从句,因为: any- 等非断定代词本就无法限定,再施加非限制性关系从句毫无意义。像 any, all 和 every 等限定词通常只有限制性修饰语。

- All the students, who had failed the test, wanted to try again. [误,应去修饰语前后的逗号,转为限制性从句,指考试不合格的所有学生。]

偶尔这样的句子里也可以使用限制性修饰语。如下:

- All the students, **who had returned from their vacation**, wanted to take the exam.

**所有学生都是度假归来的**,"度假归来"只是附加信息。

最后,在语音问题上:

- 1. 限制性关系从句与它们的先行词或中心词在读音上是一气呵成的,以示对先行词所指对象的限制。
- This is not <u>something that/which</u> would disturb me ÀNYway.
   无论如何, 这都不会打扰我。(something that ... me 连读)
- I'd like to see the car that/which/() you bought last week. (zero 由() 表示)

我想看看你上周买的那辆车。(the car that/which ... last week 连读)

- 2. 非限制性关系从句是一种插入性说明,它通常是对先行词加以描述而不是对先行词作进一步的限定,可在关系代词前面(先行词或中心词之后)停顿。
- They operated like poliTlcians | who notoriously have no sense of humour at ÀLL.

### 21.3 形容词性关系代词

仅 21.1. // 任何正人尔八两				
格	限制性		非限	制性
	人称 非人称		人称	非人称
主格	who/that	which/that	who	which
宾格	whom/that/zero	which/that/zero	whom	WHICH
属格		whose		

表 21.1: 形容词性关系代词

关系代词(见表 21.1)引导形容词性关系从句,总是放在关系从句开头, that 或零不能做非限制性关系代词。

表 21.2: 关系代词可以在关系从句中充当的成分

成分	例句	备注
S	They are delighted with the person <i>who/that</i> has been appointed.	不可省略
O	They are delighted with the person $who(m)/that$ we have appointed.	可省略
С	She is the perfect accountant <i>which</i> / <del>who/that</del> her predecessor was not.	争议。
A	He is the policeman <i>at whom</i> the thief shot.	介词后 whom
A	He is the policeman $who(m)/that$ the thief shot $at$ .	可省略
A	She arrived the day on which I was ill.	介词后不接 that
A	She arrived the day <i>which/that</i> I was ill ( <i>on</i> ).	

如果先行词是人称名词,关系代词可以表明 who 与 whom 的区别,这取决于关系 代词在关系从句中充当主语还是宾语,抑或介词补足语:

当先行词被一个**最高级形容词或后置限定词** (first, last, next, only) 修饰时, 充当关系从句**主语**的关系代词通常是 that, 充当宾语的关系代词用 that 或零形式多于用 which 或 who(m):

• She must be one of the most remarkable women **that ever lived**. that 充当关系代词,引入关系从句,其先行词是"women"。

就 that/which/who 谁能做关系从句中的补语,尚存不少争议。夸克认为当关系 代词在关系从句中充当非介词的补足语时,人称或非人称先行词后都只能用 which. 我 不知道其他专家的想法。对此暂不展开。

英语中并不存在接在先行名词之后、与 where, when, why 平行并表示方式的关系词 how:

- That's **the way** <del>how/that</del> she spoke.
- That's **how** she spoke. 正确,名词性从句。

当代词为 which (使用频率较低, 更加正式) 时, 在下列三个例子中都**必须用介词**, 而且通常**介词放在代词之前**:

- 5:30 is the time at which she usually arrives. [at which = when]
- I don't remember the day on which she left.
- He worked for three years **during which** he lived there.

### 21.4 whose 和 of which

与 who 和 whom 不同, whose 可以指人称, 也可以指非人称, 但人们不太原意用 whose 来指非人称的先行词, 可以用 of which 来表示, 但也常显得有些别扭。

- The lady whose daughter you met is Mrs. Brown.
- The house **whose roof was damaged** has now been repaired.
- The house of which the roof was damaged ...
- The house the roof of which was damaged ...

## 21.5 句子关系从句

修饰名词的关系从句的先行词是名词短语,而句子关系从句 (SENTENTIAL RELATIVE CLAUSE) 的先行词是:

21.6 TEST 219

主句的谓语或谓体 They say he plays truant, which he doesn't.

walks for an hour each morning, which would bore me.

主句或整个句子 Things then improved, which surprises me.

Colin married my sister and I married his brother, which makes Colin and me in-law.

之前多个句子 — which is how the kangaroo came to have a pouch.

所以袋鼠才有了育儿袋。

**句子关系从句与名词短语中的非限制性后置修饰从句相似,因为它们也用语调或标点符号将其本身和先行词分隔开来**。但一个修饰句子,一个对先行词做非限制性修饰,暂不详述。

- The plane may be several hours late, <u>in which case</u> there's no point in our waiting.
- They were under water for several hours, <u>from which experience</u> they emerged unharmed.

which 之外的其他关系词也用来引导句子关系分句: whereup on [after which, inconsequence of which], whence [from which, from where, in consequence of which], since when [since which time 尤其在英国英语中], until when, from when 和 by when 等。

• He found himself in an unknown land, <u>from where</u> he eventually reached Greenland.

### 21.6 Test

请选出最适当的答案填入空格内,以使句子完整。

(C) where

1. Not long ago I wrote a le	etter to a friend, almost got us into a quarrel.
(A) whom	(B) where
(C) which	(D) what
2. England, is justly p	proud of her poets, is today ranked behind the
continent in poetic achieveme	ent.
(A) which	(B) that

(D) whom

3. You are the only friend he wil	l listen to at all.
(A) where	(B) whom
(C) which	(D) that
4. Choose the correct sentence:	
(A) I have bought a book, the Hague.	e cover of which bears a picture of The
(B) I have bought a book; the Hague.	e cover of which bears a picture of The
(C) I have bought a book, the Hague.	cover of which, bears a picture of The
(D) I have bought a book, of wi	hich bears a picture of The Hague.
5. This is the one encyclopedia upor	n I can depend.
(A) that	(B) which
(C) what	(D) it
6likes good food and cheerful s	ervice would like the Regent Hotel.
(A) Who that	(B) Someone
(C) Whoever	(D) Who
<ul><li>7. This custom,, is slowly disapped.</li><li>(A) of many centuries ago originated many centuries originated many centuries originated.</li></ul>	in nturies ago
8. I find it very unfair whenI do	is considered mediocre or a failure. I can
be depressed for days because of h	appens.
I.	
(A) that	(B) those
(C) which	(D) what
II.	
(A) who	(B) what
(C) that	(D) where
9 is elected President, corruption	n won't cease.
(A) Whatever	(B) Who
(C) How	(D) Whoever
10. Neither success nor money, to me	e at least, is the criterion we are to be

21.6 TEST 221

judged.					
(A) which	(B) under which				
(C) under which	(D) since which				
11. I'm afraid I'd never be able to see Jane again, very much.					
(A) that I love	(B) I love				
(C) I love her	(D) whom I love				
12. Didn't you know that all is not gold?					
(A) which glitters	(B) glitters				
(C) who glitters	(D) that glitters				
13. I have a present for his hand first.					
(A) whoever raises	(B) whomever raises				
(C) anyone raises	(D) whoever that raises				
14. Boys in the dorm make a lot of friends.					
(A) who live	(B) who lives				
(C) live	(D) that living				
15. The final decision will be up to everyone trusts.					
(A) Judge Clemens, whom	(B) Judge Clemens, who				
(C) Judge Clemens whom	(D) Judge Clemens who				
16 he has in his pocket, it's not a gun.					
(A) What	(B) Whatever				
(C) When	(D) How				
17. Abandoned flower pots are					
(A) where do mosquitoes thrive					
(B) mosquitoes thrive there					
(C) where mosquitoes thrive					
(D) what mosquitoes thrive					
18. The author wrote his first novel he was working as a hotel clerk.					
(A) which	(B) during				
(C) what	(D) while				
19 held upside down, the fire extinguisher begins to spray bubbles.					
(A) When it is	(B) When they are				
(C) Whenever they are	(D) During it is				

20. I need to know \_\_ the library is open.

(A) that

(B) when

(C) which

(D) if it

### 21.7 Answer

- 1. (C) 这个位置是要能作 got 的主语, 又要作**非限制性关系分句**的连接词, 指代前面句子所说"写信这件事"或"这封信", 应选 which。
  - 2. (A) 同上。非限制性关系分句引导词不能用 that。
- 3. (B 或 D) 先行词是 the only friend,有明显的指示功能,且关系词是关系从句中的宾语,可用 who/whom/that。
- 4. (A) B 错在以分号隔开非限制性关系从句和其先行词, C 错在以逗号分隔开了关系从句, D 错在用介词短语 of which 作主语。

另外,这个题目其实出的不是很合适:不加逗号:可能更好。加了逗号,是非限制性关系从句,辅助说明;不加逗号的话,是限制性关系从句,限制说明。

- 5. (B) 先行词 the one encyclopedia,接关系从句,但 that 没有宾格,不能紧接在介词(upon)后面,所以选 B。
- 6. (C) wh- 名词性关系从句。用 whoever 比 who 合适,喜欢服务的任何人,非特指。
- 7. (B) A 和 C 都在名词 origin 前面加上了短语(many centuries ago 和 many centuries)来修饰,可是名词前面只能用单词的形容词来修饰,所以错误。B 是正确的关系从句。
  - 8. I(D) II(B) 两句都是 wh- 名词性关系从句, 而非形容词关系从句。
  - 9. (D) 不管谁当选, wh-名词性关系从句(名词从句)。
- 10. (C) 可还原为 We are to be judged under the criterion of ... (我们应以此标准来被衡量。),因而改成名词性关系从句,要用 under which。
- 11. (D) 关系从句 whom I love very much。因为关系从句前面有逗号, 所以 whom 不能省略。

再给大家出个纠错题,以下语句有个小语法错误:

I'm afraid I'd never be able to see Jane again, I love her very much.

答案是: **两个独立的从句应该用正确的标点符号连接**。这里可以用分号或者句号来 分隔两个句子,或者使用连词来使句子更流畅。 21.7 ANSWER 223

分号 I'm afraid I'd never be able to see Jane again; I love her very much. 分号比句号关系更紧密。

- 句号 I'm afraid I'd never be able to see Jane again. I love her very much.
- 连词 I'm afraid I'd never be able to see Jane again because I love her very much.
- 12. (D) All that glitters is not gold. (会发亮的并不都是金子。) 这是一句格言。关系从句 that glitters 之中的关系词应用 that,因为先行词 all 表示"全部",是一个指示明确的范围,所以要用 that 来取代 which。
- 13. (A) 名词从句,不管是谁先举手。
- 14. (A) who live in the dorm 是 wh- 名词性关系从句, 主语 who 代表先行词 boys, 是复数, 所以动词 live 不加 -s。D 选项如果去掉 that 也可以, 非限制性从句作后置修饰语。
- 15. (A) Judge Clemens 是专有名词,不应该再接限制性关系分局,逗号后为非限制性关系从句,应用 who/whom 均可。有人认为宾格关系代词只能用 whom,是纠枉过正的做法。
- 16. (B) 名词性关系从句。结合语意,不管他口袋里有什么,都不是一把枪。whatever 不如 what。
- 17. (C) 本句可还原为: Abandoned flower pots are places where mosquitoes thrive. (弃置的花盆是蚊虫孳生的地方。) 省略掉 places 之后就是 C 的答案。
  - 18. (D) 空格后面是表示时间的状语从句, while 即是状语从句连接词。
- 19. (A) 后面的 fire extinguisher (灭火器) 是单数, 所以代词要用单数 it。从句 it is held…需要连接词, 故选 A。D 的 during 是介词。
- 20. (B) 从语法要求来看, A 和 B 都对。A 表示"图书馆开着这件事", B 则是由疑问句变来,表示"图书馆什么时候开",两者都是正确的名词从句。不过 B 的问题比较能配合上文 I need to know…的语意。

# 第二十二章 比较从句

## 22.1 比较句的结构

在比较结构中,主句中的陈述与从句中的陈述进行比较。两句中共同的部分在从属分句中可省略。

- Jane is as healthy as ther sister (is).
   比较主体 比较成分 比较成分
- Jane is healthier than ther sister (is).
   比较主体 比较成分 比较对象

### 22.2 比较成分的从句功能

比较成分可以是比较结果中除动词以外的任何一个成分:

主语 Most people use this brand than (use) any other shampoo.

直接宾语 She knows more history than most people (know).

间接宾语 That toy has given <u>more children</u> happiness than any other (toy) (has).

主语补语 Simo is <u>more relaxed</u> than he used to be.

宾语补语 She thinks her children more taller than (they were) last year.

状语 You've been working <u>much harder</u> than I (have).

介词补足语 She's applied for more jobs than Joyce (has (applied for)).

由 more ... than, less ... than 和 as ... as 等引导词(或称比较标记)引导的不一定是比较从句,后面可接续一个明显的比较标准或状态。

- I weigh more than **200 pounds**.
- It goes faster than 100 miles per hour.

另一种不接比较从句的类型:

- I was more angry than **frightened**. [frightened: /ˈfraɪtnd/ 受惊的, 害怕的。]
- I was angry more than **frightened**.
- I was angrier than frightened.

上述最后一句错误。因为 angrier 为屈折形式的比较级,frightened(害怕的)是过去分词作形容词用,两者不对等。

more of a ... 和 less of a ... 与可分等级的名词中心语连用:

- He's **more of a fool** than I thought (he was).
- It was <u>less of a success</u> than I imagined (it would be).

### 22.3 比较从句中的省略

由于主句与从句在结构和内容上通常非常相似,因此**在比较从句中省略共同的部分 是常规而不是例外**。以下是省略和代词、替代谓语和替代谓体的例子:

James and Susan often go to plays but

- 1. James enjoys the theater more than Susan enjoys the theater.
- 2. James enjoys the theater more than Susan enjoys it.
- 3. James enjoys the theater more than Susan does.
- 4. James enjoys the theater more than Susan.
- 5. James enjoys the theater more. [因为前半句已经说明了对象有两人,所以这里可以直接省略整个比较从句。]

宾语一般不可省略,除非主要动词也省略,如第 3、4 句,此时功能词可留可不留。

• James enjoys the theater more than Susan <del>enjoys</del>.

误!比较从句中宾语省略,主要动词未省略。

但是,如果**宾语本来就是比较成分**,那么**可以省略宾语,而不省略主要动词**:

• James knows more about the theater is more than Susan knows.

如作最大限度的省略,有可能造成歧义:

• He loves his dog more than his children.

上例的意思可能是他比他的孩子更爱狗(his children 作从句主语),也可能是他爱狗超过爱孩子(his children 作从句宾语)。因此最好根据实际情况补充说明:

- He loves his dog more than his children <u>does</u> his dog.
   他比他的孩子更爱狗。
- He loves his dog more than he loves his children.
   他爱狗超过爱孩子

# 22.4 部分对比 (partial contrast)

对比可能**只影响时态**或**加上了情态助动词**而已。在这种情况下,一般是省略比较从 句情态助动词之后的部分:

- I hear it more clearly than I did. [than I used to hear it]
- I get up later than I **should**. [than I should get up] 如果只是**时态**上的对比,在比较从句中可能只用一个状语来表示:
- She'll enjoy it more than (she enjoyed it 或 she did)last year.

这就为下列例句中从句全部省略提供了基础:

- You are slimmer (than you were).
- You're looking better (than you were (looking)).
   对一个隐含或实际表达的从句存在逆向呼应的省略:
- I caught the bus from the town: but Harry came home <u>even later</u>. [later than I came home]

话语之外实境已包含被比较信息的省略:

- You should have come home earlier. [earlier than you did]
   部分对比可能是主句或对比从句中的上位从句:
- **She thinks** she's fatter than she (really) is.
- He's a greater painter than **people suppose** (he is).
- She enjoyed it more than <u>I expected</u> (her to (enjoy it)).

## 22.5 等量比较 as ... as

as ... as 结构在语法上与 more ... than 结构相似, 只是 **as 不能像 more 那样作限 定词、代词和下加伏语**; 这些功能由 as many (具数)和 as much(不具数)来弥补。 因此我们可以在必要时用 as many 和 as much 替代 more:

as ... as 可作:

限定词 Isabelle has as many books as her brother (has).

名词短语的中心词 As many of his friends are in New York as (are) here.

下加状语 I agree with you as much as ((I agree) with) Robert.

形容词中心语的修饰语 The article was **as objective** as I expected (it would be).

被前置形容词修饰的中心语 It was as lively a discussion as we thought it would be.

[形容词短语也可后置 It was a discussion as lively as ...]

副词的修饰语 I am as severely handicapped as you (are).

[副词也可后置 I am handicapped as severely *as* ...] as ADJ a NOUN as ... 也是个常见的句式。

• I did have a good time, but not <u>as good a time</u> as I should have had. 当母句是否定句时,可以用 so ... as 取代 as ... as, **从句全部或大部省略时尤其如此**:

- He's not as naughty as he was.
- He's not **so naughty** as he was.
- He's not **so naughty** (now).

# 22.6 enough 和 too

表达**足量或超越比较**的结构主要由 enough 或 too + to 不定式表示。 **足量比较** enough to 足够

- They're rich **enough to** own a car.
- The book is simple **enough to** understand.

超越比较 too 有"太过于……"的偏否定的意思。too + 形容词/副词 + to 表示"太/过于……(以至于)不能"。

- She is too ill to move. ["她病的太重, 以至于不能动"或"她病重到不能动"。
- They're not too poor to own a car.

[加 not, 是对后面 too ... to ... 的否定, 而不是对 not too ...的否定。上句话的中文意思是"他们还没有**太穷以至于不能买车**。", 由此, 更进一步和更好的翻译是"**他们还没有穷到买不起车**"。]

• The book is not **too difficult to** understand.

["这本书没有难到不能理解"或"这本书不是太难理解"。]

比较 enough 和 too:

- She's **old enough** to do some work.
- She's too old to do any work.

如果语境许可, 动词不定式从句可省略。sufficient(ly) 和 excessive(ly) 分别是 enough 和 too 的较为正式的同义词,正式用法。

- The book is **sufficiently** simple to understand.
- The book is not **excessively** difficult to understand.

## 22.7 so ... that 和 such ... that

So 是副词,前置修饰一个形容词或副词; such 是前限定词,与中后限定词一起修饰名词中心语。

当 that 从句是**否定**时,so/such 结构和 too+to 不定式结构之间有一种对应关系:

- It's **so** good a movie **that** we mustn't miss it. It's **too** good a movie **to** miss.
- It was <u>such</u> a pleasant day <u>that</u> I didn't want to go to school.

It was **too** pleasant a day **to** go to school.

当 that 从句是肯定的, so/such 结构和 enough+to 不定式结构之间有一种对应 关系:

- It flies  $\underline{so}$  fast  $\underline{that}$  it can beat the speed record.
  - It flies fast **enough to** beat the speed record.
- I had <u>such</u> a bad headache <u>that</u> I needed two aspirins.

I had a bad **enough** headache **to** need two aspirins.

当 **so** 单独与**动词**连用时,表示程度高; **such** 接续的**名词**短语没有形容词前置修饰时,同样表示程度高:

- I so (much) enjoyed it that I'm determined to go again.
- There was **such a (large) crowd that** we couldn't see a thing.

更为正式的结构 so/such ... as+to 不定式, 有时替代 so/such ... that 从句:

so (形容词/副词) as to 为了/以便于做某事。

- We went early **so as to** get good seats.
- I'm not **so stupid as to** believe that.
- Would you be **so kind as to** lock the door when you leave?

#### such 名词短语 as to 如此……以至于

• It was <u>such a difficult exam as to</u> discourage many students from taking it again.

[这是一次如此难的考试,以致于许多学生都不愿再考了。]

• She spoke in <u>such a low voice as to</u> be barely heard in the back row. [她说话的声音很低,以至于后排几乎听不见。]

# 第三部分 高级句型——简化从句

## 第二十三章 动词和形容词的补足关系

动词和形容词的补足语就是接在动词或形容词后面,说明该词所隐含的意义关系的语法结构。

## 23.1 多词动词

多词动词有两大类:

**实义动词 + 小品词** 小品词 (PARTICLE) 是一个中性名称,指一些空间副词与介词,有的小品词根据语境不同,其词性也不同。具体可分为:

短语动词 PHRASAL VERB 小品词是空间副词。例如 drink up, find out。 介词动词 PREPOSITIONAL VERB 小品词是介词,例如 dispose of, cope with。

**短语—介词动词 PHRASAL—PREPOSITIONAL** 动词后接两个小品词,前为副词,后为介词。例如 put **up with** ...

实义动词后不接小品词 例如:cut short, put paid to。

在多词动词和自由结合之间并没有明确的界限。小品词如下:

- 介词 against, among, as, at, beside, for, from, into, like, of, onto, upon, with, etc.
- 介词副词 about, above, across, after, along, around, by, down, in, off, on, out (AmE), over, past, round, through, under, up, etc. **介词副词**类既可作介词也可作副词。
- 空间副词 aback, ahead, apart, aside, astray, away, back, forward(s), home, in front, on top, out (BrE), together, etc.

本节不需要多了解,只需要知道**多词动词在语义上是一个整体**,这常常表现在它可用一个动词来替代。本节内容可以暂且略过,需要时再看。

介词和空间副词之间最明显的差别在于: 介词要求后面跟有一个名词短语作为补足语, 而副词则不要求这样。上述小品词

#### 23.1.1 不及物短语动词

不及物短语动词, 一个动词接一个副词小品词。

- The plane has just **touched down**.
- He is playing around.
- I hope you'll get by.
- How are you **getting on**?
- Did he catch on?
- The prisoner finally broke down.
- She <u>turned up</u> unexpectedly.
- When will they **give in**?
- The tank **blew up**.
- The two girls have <u>fallen out</u>.

短语动词和自由组合的差异:

- 诸如 give in(投降)和(blow up)爆炸这样的不及物短语动词, 我们无法孤立地根据动词和小品词的意思来预测组合后习语的意思。但是在自由组合中(如: walk past), 我们就可以做出预测。
- 自由组合可替代可拆分。walk past 中的 walk, 我们可以用 run, trot, swim, fly 等来替代;至于 past,我们可用 by, in, through, over 等来替代。
- 通常不及物短语动词为固定搭配,动词和小品词之间不能插入其他内容且顺序固定;但在自由组合中就可以,如 go straight on, 另外自由组合中还可以副词前置,如 out came the sun, Up you come 等。

#### 23.1.2 及物短语动词

很多短语动词可以带有直接宾语, 因此是及物的:

- We will **set up** a new unit.
- Shall I **put away** the dishes?

23.1 多词动词 235

- **Find out** if they are coming.
- She's **bring up** two children.
- Someone **turned on** the light.
- They have <u>called off</u> the strike.
- He can't <u>live down</u> his past.
- I can't **make out** what he means.
- She **looked up** her friends.
- They may have **blown up** the bridge.

和同一种形式的自由组合一样,及物短语动词的小品词既可以在直接宾语之前,也可以在其后面:

- They **turned on** the light.
- They **turned** the light **on**.
- She <u>looked</u> her friends <u>up</u>.

但是, 当宾语是人称代词时, 小品词必须位于宾语之后:

• They <u>turned</u> it <u>on</u>.

当宾语较长,或有意要使宾语成为末端的中心,小品词就往往放在宾语之前。 在惯用夸张语表达中,小品词只能放在最后:

- I was **crying** my eyes **out**.
- I was laughing my head off.
- I was **sobbing** my heart **out**.

#### 23.1.3 第一类介词动词

第一类介词动词由实义动词后接介词构成,两者在语义上或句法上相关联。接在介词后面的名词短语是**介词宾语**,这个术语表示与直接宾语相区别。

- Look at these pictures.
- I don't <u>care for</u> Jane's parties.
- We must **go into** the problem.

介词动词也可以有被动态;也可以轻松地在实义动词和介词之间插入一个副词:

- This matter will have to **be dealt with** immediately.
- The picture <u>was looked at</u> disdainfully by many people.
- Many people **looked** disdainfully **at** the picture.

就**介词宾语发问**的 wh- 疑问句是由**代词** who(m) 和 what (用于直接宾语) 引导, 而不是**疑问副词**。

#### 23.1.4 第二类介词动词

第二类介词动词是双宾语动词。也就是说,它们后面**接两个名词短语,通常由介词** 分开:后者为介词宾语,例如:

- They <u>plied</u> the young man <u>with</u> food.
- Please **confine** your remarks **to** the matter under discussion.
- This clothing will **protect** you **from** the worst weather.
- Jenny thanked us for the present.
- May I <u>remind</u> you <u>of</u> our agreement? They have <u>provided</u> the child <u>with</u> a good education.

直接宾语在对应的被动态从句中变为主语:

- The gang **robbed** her **of** her necklace.
- She was **robbed of** her necklace (by the gang).

#### 23.1.5 短语-介词短语

短语-介词动词除实义动词外,还包含作小品词的副词和介词。他们多是非正式文体。

第一类短语-介词动词只包含一个介词宾语:

- We are all **looking forward to** your party on Saturday.
- He had to **put up with** a lot of teasing at school. [忍受, 容忍, 包容]
- Why don't you **look in on** Mrs. Johnson on your way back? [(短暂)探访]
- He things he can **get away with** everything.

第二类短语-介词动词是双宾语动词。他们需要两个宾语,第二个宾语是介词宾语(往往被视为**受事**参与者):

23.2 动词补足语 237

- Don't take it out on me! [向…发泄; 拿…撒气]
- We <u>put our</u> success down <u>to</u> hard work. [to consider that sth. is caused by sth. 把…归因于]

• I'll <u>let</u> you <u>in on</u> a secret. [to allow sb. to share a secret 告知,透露(秘密)]

## 23.2 动词补足语

#### 23.2.1 不及物动词

不及物动词除一般不及物用法以外, 还有:

也可作及物而意思不变的动词 可将其当作有一个"显明的被省略的宾语"。

- He **smokes** (a cigarette).
- I am **reading** (a book).
- He <u>drinks</u> (alcohol) heavily.
- Knock before you **enter** (the room).

此外还有 drive, enter, help, pass, play, win, write。

也可作及物但主被动变换 不及物用法以受事参与者为主语;及物用法以施事者为主语。

- The door <u>opened</u> slowly. 比较: Mary <u>opened</u> the door.
- The car <u>stopped</u>. 比较: He <u>stopped</u> the car.
- The door <u>closed</u> behind him: You can <u>close</u> the door easily—it just <u>pulls</u>. [you just <u>pull</u> it"]

此外还有 begin, change, drop, increase, move, turn, unite, walk, work 等词。 也有些不及物动词变及物动词时,有使宾语被动的意思:

- run the water [cause the water to run]
- <u>slide</u> the drawer shut [<u>slide</u> back the drawer 谓语 + 状语] 关上抽屉

#### 作不及物用时有互相参与意义 如:

- We have <u>met</u>. 比较: I have <u>met</u> you.
- The bus and car <u>collided</u>. 比较: The bus <u>collided</u> with the car.(也是不及物)

#### 23.2.2 动词补足关系的分类

动词补足关系的分类,其实几乎等同于**句法成分分析**。其实有多种句法成分划分方式,并且无论哪一种方式在涉及到复杂句子时都会难度陡增。**选择一种足够自洽或自己喜欢的方式简单了解即可,能了解多少就算多少**。毕竟成分划分可是语言专家的主战场呢。

本笔记采用夸克的分类方式,其实我对(表 23.1)中很多非限定分句的句法成分也不懂,哈哈。如英语功力深厚,英去夸克语法大全第 16 章一探究竟。

#### 23.2.3 系词补足关系

seem, appear, look, sound, feel, smell, taste 等 "seeming" 感官系动词在下列 这类句子中用由 as if/though(似乎,好像)开头的状语从句来补足。

- Jill <u>looked as if</u> she had seen a ghost.
- It seems as if the weather is improving.

#### 23.2.4 单宾语及物补足关系

在 cost ten dollars; weight 20 kilos 之类的度量用语中可见到 VO 类型,但有同样理由将其分析为 V + A,其中 A 为必要附加状语。因为除了用 what 外,还可以用 how much 问句:

- How much / What does it cost/weight?
   宾语为 that- 从句的句子变被动式,宾语变主语时, that 不能省略(见 18.2 节):
- Everybody hoped (that) she would sing.
- <u>That</u> she would sing was hoped by everybody.

  SVO 结构中, 不带主语的不定式从句、-ing 从句**被省略的主语往往和母句的主语相**同。
- I love <u>listening to music</u>.

也有例外:

被省略的主语独立且显明 分词主语不确定,并且独立于前面母句主语。

He recommended <u>introducing a wealth tax</u>.
 负责征收财产税的人是政府机关,而不是母句主语"他"。

23.2 动词补足语 239

表 23.1: 动词补足关系的类型

变体	例句
连系动词(SVC 和 SVA)	
形容词性 $C_s$	The girl seemed restless.
名词性 $C_s$	William is my friend.
状语补足语	The kitchen is downstairs.
单宾语及物动词(SVO)	
名词短语作 O	Tom caught the ball.
(有被动式)	
名词短语作O	Paul lacks confidence.
(无被动式)	
that-从句作 O	I think that we have met.
wh-从句作O	Can you guess what she said?
wh- 不定式 (-S) 作 O	I learned how to look after the cats.
to- 不定式 (-S) 作 O	We've decided to move house.
-ing 从句 (-S) 作 O	She enjoys playing table tennis.
to- 不定式 (+S) 作 O	They want us to help.
-ing 从句 (+S) 作 O	I hate the children picking a fight.
复合及物动询 (SVOC 和 SVOA)	
形容词性 $C_o$	That music drives me mad.
名词性 $C_o$	They named the ship "Zeus".
O + 状语	I left the key at home.
O + to- 不定式	They knew him to be a spy.
O + 不带 to 不定式	I saw her leave the room.
O + -ing 从句	I heard someone shouting.
O + -ed 从句	I get the watch repaired.
双宾语及物动词 (SVOO)	
名词短语作 $O_i$ 和 $O_d$	Tom give me some food.
介词短语作 〇	Please say something to us.
$O_i$ + that- 从句	They told me that I was ill.
$O_i$ + wh- 从句	He asked me what time it was.
$O_i$ + wh- 不定式从句	Mary showed us what to do.
$O_i$ + to- 不定式	I advised Mark to see a doctor.

a  $C_s$  主语补语, $O_i$  indirect objects 间接宾语, $O_d$  direct objects 直接宾语,+S 含主语,-S 不含主语,,

Jack hates her missing the train.

不带主语	带主语
to- 不定式 Jack hates to miss the train.	Jack hates her to miss the train.

表 23.2: 作宾语的非限定性从句

SVO 中,**带主语的不定式从句**可以作补足语,但这一组中的动词为数极少,主要表示(不)喜欢或(不)想要,如 desire, hate, like, love, prefer, want and wish:

• They don't like the house to be left empty.

在这些动词之后,不定式之前的名词短语不能转变为被动式中的主语。

• The house isn't liked to be left empty (by them).

SVO 中, **带主语的 -ing 从句**可以作补足语。虽然**人称主语可用属格形式**,但常常使人感到别扭或不自然。

• I dislike **him/his** driving my car.

-ing 从句 Jack hates missing the train.

- We look forward to <u>you/your</u> becoming our neighbour.
   that-从句补语:
- It seems (that) you are mistaken.
- It appears (that) you have lost your temper.

以上两例句中 that- 从句不是动词的宾语而是**外置主语**。

外置主语 (EXTRAPOSITION) 句子中通过形式主语 "it" 将真正的主语移到句末的现象。这种结构通常用于使句子更流畅或避免过长的主语,使得句子的重心更加突出。 外置主语常见于名词性从句和不定式,除上面 that- 从句外,还有:

- <u>It</u> is unclear <u>why</u> she told him.
- Would <u>it</u> be better <u>to pay now</u>?

常用于这种类型的动词有: seem, appear, happen 和动词短语 come about [happen]和 turn out [transpire]。

#### 23.2.5 复合及物 (SVOC 和 SVOA) 的补足关系

复合及物补足关系的一个明显特征是:动词后面的两个成分(OC或OA)在意义 上分别等同于一个名词性从句的主语和谓体。

单宾语及物 She presumed that her father was dead.

#### 复合及物 She presumed her father (to be) dead.

介词 as(作为)表示连系关系,特别是说明与直接宾语有关的角色或地位。

• We considered him  $\left\{ egin{align*} \mbox{a genius} \\ \mbox{as a genius} \end{array} 
ight. 
ight.$  to be a genius

但在某些方面,介词 as 和引导比较从句的连词 as 相似,**一方面引导从句;另一方面又**引导和从句同位的名词短语:

- Report me as I am a superman.
- He described her as he found her, a liar.

表 23.3: SVOC 和 SVOA 中的非限定性从句

非限定性从句	例句
to-不定式	They knew him to be a spy.
不带 to 不定式	I heard someone <i>slam the door</i> .
-ing 从句	I caught Ann reading my diary.
-ed 从句	We saw him beaten by the German in final.

表 23.3 中作为**宾语补语的的非限定性从句**(斜体表示)自身没有主语,但**其隐含的主语总是前面的宾语**,这样的宾语被叫做**上升宾语 (RAISED OBJECT)**。语义上,上升宾语是 **非限定型动词的主语**;句法上,它从非限定性从句中上升出来作**母句的宾语**。要**注意歧义**,如 left sb/sth to do sth 和 left sb/sth doing sth:

● Tom left her {to finish the job. [Tom 离开她,去完成工作(目的)。] finishing the job. [Tom 离开她;她完成工作。her 上升宾语]

#### 23.2.6 双宾语及物 (SVOO) 补足关系

不同于 SVOC 中宾语与宾语补语的连系关系; SVOO 中两个宾语之间没有连系关系。

#### 宾语和介词宾语

介词短语可做宾语,大体有以下句型:

## 23.3 形容词的补足关系

#### 名词不能做形容词补足语。

和介词动词一样,形容词经常和后面的介词构成词汇单位: good at, fond of, opposed to, angry with/about 等等。

表 23.4: 宾语和介词宾语

动词	双宾语	例句
	$O_i + O_d$	Mary told only John the secret.
told	$O_d + O_p$	Mary told the secret only to John.
	$O_i + O_p$	Mary told only John about the secret.
offer	$O_i + O_d$	John offered Mary some help.
oner	$O_d + O_p$	John offered some help to Mary.
001111	$O_i + O_d$	She envied John his success.
envy	$O_i + O_p$	She envied John for his success.
wish	$O_i + O_d$	They wished him good luck.
blame	$O_d + O_p$	He blamed the divorce on John.
Diame	$O_i + O_p$	He blamed John for the divorce.
say	$O_d + O_p$	Why didn't anybody say this to me?
warn	$O_i + O_p$	Mary warned John of the dangers.

a  $O_i$  indirect objects 间接宾语, $O_d$  direct objects 直接宾语, $O_p$  preposition objects 介词宾语

表 23.5: 形容词补足语类型

形容词补足语类型	例句
介词短语	She felt angry with herself.
that- 从句	I am surprised (that) you didn't call the doctor before.
wh- 从句	It was unclear what they would do.
to-不定式	Bob is sorry to hear it.
-ing 从句	I'm busy (with) getting the house redecorated.

## 第二十四章 名词短语

名词短语也可以非常复杂,因为句子本身可以被改写,以适用于名词短语结构。例如:

- The girl is Mary Smith.
- The girl is tall.
- The girl was standing in the corner.
- You waved to the girl when you entered.
- The girl became angry because you knocked over her glass.

以上句子可以组合为一个由很长的名词短语作主语的简单句:

• The tall girl standing in the corner who became angry because you knocked over her glass after you waved to her when you entered is Mary Smith.

## 24.1 名词短语的构成部分

中心成分 (HEAD) 被其他成分群集于周围,使之构成一致关系的成分,通常是一个名词或代词。中心成分确定了名词短语的句法角色(如主语、宾语等)以及与其他句子成分的关系。如以上名词长句中的 girl。

限定成分 (DETERMINATIVE) 它包括:前位、中心、后位限定词,见表 2.4。

- 前置修饰 (PREMODIFICATION) 位于中心词前,除限定词以外的所有成分,一般是形容词(短语)和作形容词用的名词,也称"定语"。如:
  - some **expensive** equipment
  - some very very expensive office equipment
- 后置修饰 (POSTMODIFICATION) 位于中心词后的所有词项,有介词短语、非限定从句和关系从句和补足语。起后置修饰作用的从句也被称为定语分句。

介词短语 the car outside the station

非限定性从句 the car standing outside the station

关系从句 the car that stood outside the station

补足语 a bigger car than that

whose 是物主关系代词,像 his, her, its, there 一样用在名词前作限定词。后置修饰语(关系从句)中,不管是人或物都可以用 whose。有人认为用 whose 指代物品不合适,可以用 of which 或 that ... of 替代:

- I saw a girl whose beauty took my breath away. 我见到一个女孩,她的美貌让我十分惊异。(主语)
- It was a meeting whose purpose I did not understand.
   这个会议的目的我不明白。(宾语)
- I went to see my friends, the Jims, <u>whose children</u> I used to look after when they were small.

我去看我的朋友, 吉姆一家, 他家孩子很小时曾由我照料过。

- He's written a book **whose name/the name of which** I've forgotten.
- He's written a book **that** I've forgotten **the name of**.
- He's written a book <u>of which</u> I've forgotten <u>the name</u>.

## 24.2 限制性关系从句作后置修饰语

后置修饰的限制性从句可包括:

(形容词性) 关系从句 见第 二十一章, 略。

同位从句 同位语从句(Appositive clause)是一种名词性从句,它在复合句中充当同位语,通常用于进一步解释或说明前面的名词。

同位从句中连接词**只能是 that**,不能用 wh-代词替代,**that 也不构成从句成分**。 名词短语中心词应是一个**概括性抽象名词**,例如 fact, idea, proposition, reply, remark, answer, news 等等。

- The news that the team had won calls for a celebration.
- I agree with the old saying that absence makes the heart grow fonder. absence makes the heart grow fonder 习语,不相见,倍思念。

因为是同位关系, 所以用 be 动词把它和被同位的单位连接起来后仍语法正确。

- The news **IS** that the team had won.
- The old saying **IS** that absence makes the heart grow fonder.

夸克认为存在句和分裂句中可加可不加的 that 和 wh- 从句并不是形容性关系从句。

#### 补全存在句和分裂句意思

- There's a table (that/which) stands in the corner. [存在句]
- It was Simon (that/who) did it. [分裂句]

#### 24.2.1 非限定性从句作后置修饰语

三种非限定性从句都可以充当名词短语的后置修伤语: -ing 分词从句, -ed 分词从句和不定式从句。

#### -ing 分词从句作后置修饰语

-ing 从句和关系从句的对应关系只限于以关系代词为主语的那些关系从句:

• The person who  $\begin{cases} will \ write \\ will \ be \ writing \\ writes \\ is \ writing \\ wrote \\ was \ writing \end{cases}$  reports is my colleague.

• The person writing reports is my colleague.

必须强调的是,后置修饰从句中的 -ing 形式不应该看作是关系从句中进行体的缩略形式。例如,静态动词在限定性动词短语中不可能用进行式,但可以用于分词形式中。

• It was a mixture **consisting** of oil and vinegar.

不能说是 that was consisting(静态动词)的缩写。

其实我认为可以这样简单粗暴理解, **现在分词从句可以是关系从句中进行体的缩略** 形式, 也可以是关系从句中(不带连系动词)一般式的缩略形式。

#### -ed 分词从句作后置修饰语

和 -ing 从句一样, -ed 分词从句仅与**关系代词作主语的关系从句**相对应:

- The car that { will be repaired { is (being) repaired } by that mechanic. was (being) repaired }
- The car <u>(being) repaired</u> by that mechanic.

#### 不定式从句作后置修饰语

与 -ing 和 -ed 从句不同,不定式从句所对应关系从句中的关系代词除了可以是**从 句主语**外,还可以是**宾语**或**状语**,有限范围内还可以是**补语**。

主语 The man to help you is Mr Johnson. who can help you

宾语 The man \_\_\_\_(for you) to see \_\_\_ is Mr Johnson. who(m) you should see

补语 不懂, 略。

大全 17.30 看不懂, 需补充

状语 The time <u>(for you) to go</u> is July. when (you) should go

**状语** The place \_\_\_\_(**for you**) **to stay** \_\_\_ is this room. [where = at which, 另从句 where (you) should stay 主语可省]

因省略了连词、主语、be 助动词等, -ing 从句, -ed 从句, 不定式从句都存模糊性。 由不定式从句作同位后置修饰语可能没有对应的同位限定性从句, 而只有一个介词 短语和它相对应:

- He lost the ability to use his hands. [of using 可代替 to use]
   He lost the ability that he could use his hands.
- Any attempt to leave early is against regulations. [at leaving 可替代 to leave]
  Any attempt that one should leave early is against regulations.

何时用 to 不定式, 何时用介词 +ing, 夸克说的较乱, 我理解困难, 日后整理。

#### 24.2.2 用介词短语作后置修饰语

我们还可以用介词短语作后置修饰语,如下最后一句例句:

- The car was standing outside the station.
- the car which was standing outside the station
- the car *standing* outside the station
- the car **outside the station**

在英语中,介词短语肯定是后置修饰语中最常见的类型.

24.3 名词化 247

- the road to Lincoln
- this book on grammar
- a man from the electricity company
- action in case of fire
- the meaning of this sentence
- the house **beyond the church**
- two years **before the war**
- some trees along the river bank
- the university as a political forum

#### 名词化 24.3

我们应该把介词短语作后置修饰语看作是其作状语的特殊例子。

名词化 (nominalization) 在语法上将其他词性 (如动词或形容词) 派生为名词形式, 使 原本表达动作或状态的词汇变成了表示事物、概念或状态的名词, 从而使句子的结 构和信息传达方式发生变化。

#### 例句:

- his **refusal** to help [n.]
- he **refuses** to help [v.]
- the **truth** of her statement [n.] her statement is **true** [v.]
- her **friendship** for Jim [抽象名词] she is a **friend** of Jim [具体名词]

在英语中,动词通常通过添加后缀如 "-ment", "-tion", "-ure" 等来进行名词化 (详见表 A.4)。例如:

• fail → failure • entertain  $\rightarrow$  entertainment act  $\rightarrow$  action 此外,一些动词和形容词可以直接作为名词使用,而不需要添加任何后缀,例如 "change"、 "increase" 和 "use"。

## 24.4 后置修饰的次要类型

#### 24.4.1 副词短语作后置修饰

# 第二十五章 主位 (Theme)、中心 (Focus) 和信息处理 (Information processing)

本章介绍的内容,如前置、倒装、分裂句等,都是为了调整句中某部分信息的权重。

## 25.1 前置 (Fronting)

**前置** 把一个非主语词项从它通常所在位置移到句首,使其成为中心内容——即使其不是 主语。这也叫作主题化 (TOPICALIZATION).

前置成分可以是:

- 宾语 People like that I just can't stand.
  - <u>This question</u> we have already discussed many times.
  - What I'm going to do next I just don't know.

补语 较为少见, 且现代英语中更少见。

• **Fool** that I was.

副词和状语 ● <u>Here</u> we go.

- Once upon a time there were three little pigs. once upon a time, "从前" (用于故事开头), 习语。
- Round the corner came Mrs Porter.

as 和 though 时 形容词或副词前置

- Young as I was, I realized what was happening.
- <u>Tired though she was</u>, she went on working.

- Much as I respect his work, I cannot agree with him.
- Genius as you may be, you have no right to be rude to your teachers.

## 25.2 倒装 (Inversion)

一个成分的提前,往往牵涉到语序的倒装,有时涉及细微的句法调整。

**主语和动词的倒装** SVC 和 SVA 类型的从句大部分有必不可缺的第三成分,因为动词自身通常非常缺乏传达动力。如果只是将补语 C 或状语 A 提前,会把重心末在末短的动词上,有可能造成语义不清,如:

**SVC** The sound of the bell grew faint.

**CSV** <u>Faint</u> <u>the sound of the bell</u> grew. [不清晰,有可能误解为逐渐变小的铃声变大 grew(louder)]

**CVS** Faint grew the sound of the bell. [有矫揉造作感。]

还有:

SVA The Squidward's hopes and dreams lies here.

章鱼哥的希望和梦想埋葬(躺)在这里。尾重,突出 here。

**AVS** Here <u>lies the Squidward</u>'s <u>hopes and dreams</u>. [尾重,在埋葬 lies 这样沉重悲伤的词之后**突出主语**,渲染到位。]

这里埋葬着章鱼哥的希望和梦想。

日常对话有些倒装句:

AVS Here comes my brother.

**AVS** Down <u>came</u> the rain.

**AVS** Up went the flag.

主语和动词的倒装 OVS 中, 前移的宾语 O 主要表示直接话语, 并且主语往往不是人称代词:

"Please go away," said one child."And don't come back," pleaded another.

这个例子有点书面化,日常话语中一般用 SV 替代 VS,如 "one child said", "another pleaded".

# 主语和功能词的倒装 **so, neither, nor** ● John saw the accident and <u>so did Mary</u>. [Mary did so]

- He couldn't speak, nor could he walk.
- She wasn't angry and **neither was I**. [I wasn't, either]
- She must come and **so must you**. [you must come too]
- 如果想将重心放在动词上,也可只前置 so.
   You asked me to leave, so I did.

另外要注意到, so, neither, nor 以上例句中主要动词均被省略, 只有功能助动词。

**否定形式或意义的短语前置** 正式文体中,形式和意义上否定整个从句的成分前置, 且主语和功能词往往需要倒装。

- This door must be left unlocked at no time.
   At no time must this door be left unlocked.
- Only in this way is it possible to explain their actions.
- Not a single book had he read that month.
- Not a word whould he say.
- <u>No longer</u> are they staying with us.
- **NÓT ùntil yesterday** / did he CHÀNGE his mind.

#### 主语不是人称代词的比较从句 ● I spend more than do my friends.

- Oil costs less than would atomic energy.
   Oil costs less than did it. [人称代词作主语的 than 从句不能倒装]
- She is a doctor, as is he. [人称代词作主语的 as 从句可以倒装]
- They go to concerts frequently, as do I.

条件和让步从句 • Were she alive today, she would grieve at the changes.

- <u>Had</u> <u>I</u> known, I would have gone to her.
- **Should you** change your plans, please let me know.

## 25.3 分裂句和假拟分裂句

分裂句是是将一个句子分裂成两个从句,**其中一个从句的某成分为信息焦点,另一从句为处于支配地位、提供背景说明的关系从句**,借此突出信息焦点的句式。通常是为了强调动作的执行者、动作本身或是动作发生的时间、地点等。

**it** 子句分裂句 It + BE + **focus** + (that, who, whom, which, 零) 名词性关系从句, 如:

- It is **Simon** who's gone down.
- It was <u>here</u> that the young girl first fell in love.
- It was <u>this matter</u> on which I consulted with Dr. Richard. 我就此事与理查德博士进行了磋商。
- **wh-** 假拟分裂句 名词性关系从句 (Wh- + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分) + BE + **focus** 焦点可以是:
  - 名词短语 What I saw was one of the most impressive government policies in years.

我所看到的是近年来最令人印象深刻的政府政策之一。

动词短语 What you do is wear it like that.

你要做的是像那样穿衣。

What I did was **send a complaint to Radio 2**.

我要做的是像 2 号电台投诉。[send 动词原形]

关系从句 What you'll find is **that people who lie down with dogs will get up with fleas**, my boy.

你会发现近墨者黑,我的儿子。(改编自西方谚语,字面意思是跟狗躺在一块儿的人,会和跳蚤一起起床。)

What I didn't like was leaving my mum.

wh- 名词性关系从句可以和焦点的位置颠倒:

- Send a complaint to Radio 2 is what I did.
- Leaving my mum was what I didn't like.

动词成分绝对不能充当分裂句的焦点,正如它不能以一个 wh- 成分出现一样。

## 25.4 存在句

在默认结构中,一般默认主位为已知信息。如果期望听话者把主位理解为全新的信息——与以前介绍过的任何事物没有关系,便利的做法是提供某种**假位主位**,使听者将整句话理解为全新信息。

除 be 外,there 也可以和 appear, arise, arrive, begin, come, develop, emerge, enter, escape, exist, live, loom, occur, remain, stand) 等联动。另外还有其他假位主位。

- There is / I have a car blocking my way.
- There are some people (that) I'd like you to meet.

There are
We have
One finds
It's a fact that

many students are in financial trouble.

图 A.1: Gimson 英语音标

		前元音	iː	I	e	æ	
	单元音	中元音	31	Э	Λ		
元音		后元音	);	α	a:	uː	υ
	双元音	开合双元音	еі	aı	ΟI	θÜ	aυ
	7,7,6 H	集中双元音	ΙƏ	еә	บอ		
	海 本 本	清辅音	p	t	k		
	爆破音	浊辅音	b	d	g		
	麻擦文	清辅音	f	S	ſ	θ	h
	摩擦音	浊辅音	V	Z	3	ð	
辅音	Titt +袋 - 文文.	清辅音		tſ			
	破擦音 	浊辅音		ф			
	鼻音	(浊辅音)	m	n	ŋ		
	舌则音	(浊辅音)	1	r			
	半元音	(浊辅音)	j	W			

**图 A.2:** 英文字母 Gimson 音标

Aa	/e1/	Bb	/bi:/	Cc	/si:/	Dd	/diː/		
Ee	/ <b>i</b> :/	Ff	/ef/	Gg	/&i:/				
Hh	/eɪtʃ/	li	/aɪ/	Jj	/ge1/	Kk	/keɪ/	LI	/el/
Mm	/em/	Nn	/en/	Oo	/əʊ/	Pр	/pi:/		
Qq	/kju:/	Rr	/a:/	Ss	/es/				
Tt	/ti:/	Uu	/ju:/	Vv	/vi:/				
Ww	/ˈdʌbl	iu:/	Xx	/eks/		Υv	/waɪ/	Zz	/zi:/

表 A.1: 不规则动词

表 A.1: 不规则动词 (Continued)

Infinitive 不定式 a- be be- bear beat	过去式 arise, awal	Past participle 过去分词
a- be be- bear	arise, awal	
be be- bear		→ L →
be- bear		
bear	was,were	
	become, be	efall, beset 对应
boot	bore	borne
Deat	beat	beaten
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt	burnt
	burned	burned
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
cleave	clove	cloven
510410	cleft	cleft
cling	clung	clung
_	_	_
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
	costed	costed
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dive	dived	dived
	dove	
do(does)	did	done
drag	dragged	dragged
	drug	drug
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed	dreamed
	dreamt	dreamt

表 A.1: 不规则动词 (Continued)

表 A.1: 不规则动词 (Continued)

T., C	Dect to	Post monti simlo
		Past participle
不定式	过去式	过去分词
lead	led	led
lean	leaned	leaned
	leant	leant
leap	leaped	•
	leapt	leapt
learn	learned	learned
	learnt	learnt
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
O	lighted	lighted
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
mis-		mistake 对应
	-	
offset	offset	offset
pay	paid	•
prove	proved	proved
		proven
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
re-	redo, rema	ake 对应
read	read	read
rend	rent	rent
rid	rid	rid
	ridded	ridded
		ridden
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
shed	shed	shed

表 A.1: 不规则动词 (Continued)

表 A.2: 不规则复数 (Continued)

1X A.1.		(Continued)
Infinitive	Past tense	Past participle
不定式	过去式	过去分词
strive	strove	striven
	strived	strived
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swell	swelled	swollen
		swelled
swim	swam	swum
swing	swang	swung
	swung	
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
text	texted	texted
	text	text
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden
		trod
un-	unbend, u	nweave 对应
under-	underlie, u	ındergo,
	understan	d 对应
upset	upset	upset
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
weep	wept	wept
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
with-	withdraw/withhold/	
	withstand	对应
wring	wrang	wrung
	wrung	
write	wrote	written

表 A.2: 不规则复数

Count noun	Plural
addendum	addenda
alga	algae
alumna	alumnae
alumnus	alumni

Continued on next page

表 A.2: 个规则》	是数 (Continued)
Count noun	Plural
analysis	analyses
antenna	antennas
	antennae
apparatus	apparatuses
appendix	appendices
	appendixes
axis	axes
bacillus	bacilli
bacterium	bacteria
basis	bases
beau	beaux
bison	bison
buffalo	buffalos
	buffaloes
bureau	bureaus
bus	busses
	buses
cactus	cactuses
	cacti
calf	calves
child	children
corps	corps
corpus	corpora
	corpuses
crisis	crises
criterion	criteria
curriculum	curricula
datum	data
deer	deer
die	dice
dwarf	dwarfs
	dwarves
diagnosis	diagnoses
echo	echoes
elf	elves
ellipsis	ellipses
embargo	embargoes
emphasis	emphases
erratum	errata
fireman	firemen
fish	fish
	fishes
focus	focuses

Continued on next page

表 A.2: 不规则复数 (Continued)

Count noun Plural foot feet formula formulas fungus fungi funguses genus genera goose geese half halves hero heroes hippopotamus hippopotami hippopotamuses hoof hoofs hooves hypothesis hypotheses index indices indexes knivesleaf knife leaf leaves lives life loaf loaves louse lice man men matrix matrices means means media medium memorandum memoranda millennium millenniums milennia moose moose mosquito mosquitoes mouse mice nebula nebulae nebulas neurosis neuroses nucleus nuclei oasis oases octopus octopi octopuses ovum ova oxen ox paralysis paralyses parenthesis parentheses people person phenomenon phenomena

表 A.2: 不规则复数 (Continued)

Count noun	Plural
potato	potatoes
radius	radii
	radiuses
scarf	scarfs
	scarves
self	selves
series	series
sheep	sheep
shelf	shelves
scissors	scissors
species	species
stimulus	stimuli
stratum	strata
syllabus	syllabi
	syllabuses
symposium	symposia
	symposiums
synthesis	syntheses
synopsis	synopses
tableau	tableaux
that	those
thesis	theses
thief	thieves
this	these
tomato	tomatoes
tooth	teeth
torpedo	torpedoes
vertebra	vertebrae
veto	vetoes
vita	vitae
watch	watches
wife	wives
wolf	wolves
woman	women
zero	zeros
	zeroes

Continued on next page

表 A.3: 主要前缀

前缀	主要加于	通常意义	例子
a-	adj	not, without	amoral, asexual
Anglo-	adj	English	Anglo-American
ante-	adj, verbs, nouns	before	antenatal, antedate, anteroom
anti-	adj, nouns	against	antisocial, anti-war
arch-	nouns	supreme, most	archbishop, arch-enemy
auto-	adj, nouns	self	automatic, autobiography
bi-	adj, nouns	two	bilingual, bicycle
bio-	adj, nouns	life	biodegradable, biochemist
cent(i)-	nouns	hundredth	centimetre, centilitre
со-	verbs, nouns	together (with)	co-operate, co-pilot
counter-	adj, verbs, nouns	against	counteract, counter-revolution
cyber-	nouns	computer, internet	cybercafe, cybernetics
de-	verbs	reversing action	defrost, deregulate
de-	verbs	take away	deforest
dis-	adj, verbs, nouns	not, opposite	disloyal, disappear, disorder
dis-	verbs	reversing action	disconnect, disinfect
e-	nouns	electronic, internet	email, e-commerce, e-book
eco-	adj, nouns	environment	eco-friendly, eco-tourism
en-	nouns	put in	endanger, encircle
en-	adj	make	enrich, enable
ex-	nouns	former	ex-husband
extra-	adj	exceptionally	extra-special
extra-	adj	outside	extra-terrestrial
fore-	verbs, nouns	before	foretell, foreknowledge
geo-	adj, nouns	earth	geothermal, geophysics
hyper-	adj, nouns	extreme(ly)	hypercritical, hypertension
ill-	过去分词	badly	ill-advised, ill-expressed
in-	adj	not, opposite	incomplete, insensitive
il-l	adj	not, opposite	illegible
ir-r	adj	not, opposite	irregular
inter-	adj, verbs	between, among	international, intermarry
kilo-	nouns	thousand	kilometre, kilogram
mal-	adj, verbs, nouns	bad(ly)	maltreat, malformed, malfunction
mega-	nouns	million	megabyte

<u>262</u> 附录 A 图表

表 A.3: 主要前缀 (Continued)

前缀	主要加于	通常意义	例子
mega-	adj (informal)	extremely	mega-rich
micro-	adj, nouns	very small	microlight (aircraft), micrometer
mid-	nouns	in the middle of	mid-December, mid-afternoon
milli-	nouns	thousandth	millisecond
mini-	nouns	little	minibus, minicab
mis-	verbs, nouns	wrong(ly)	misunderstand, misconduct
mono-	adj, nouns	one	monogamous, monorail
multi-	adj, nouns	many	multilingual, multi-purpose
neo-	adj, nouns	new(ly)	neo-classical, neo-Nazi
non-	nouns, adj	not	non-smoker, non-returnable
omni-	adj	all	omnipresent
out-	verbs	do/be more than	outrun, outnumber
over-	adj, verbs	too much	over-confident, overeat
pan-	adj	right across	pan-American
photo-	adj, nouns	light	photoelectric, photosynthesis
poly-	adj, nouns	many	polyglot, polygon
post-	adj, nouns	after	post-modern, postwar
pre-	adj, nouns	before	premarital, prewar
pro-	adj, nouns	for, in favour of	pro-communist, pro-government(adj)
pseudo-	adj	FALSE	pseudo-academic
psycho-	adj, nouns	mind, mental	psycho-analysis
re-	verbs, nouns	again, back	rebuild, reconstruction
semi-	adj, nouns	half	semi-conscious, semicircle
socio-	adj, nouns	society	socio-economic
sub-	adj, nouns	below	substandard, subconscious, subway
super-	adj nouns	more than, special	supernatural, supermarket
tele-	nouns	distant	telescope
thermo-	adj, nouns	heat	thermo-electric, thermometer
trans-	adj, verbs	across	transatlantic, transplant
tri-	adj, nouns	three	tripartite, triangle
ultra-	adj, nouns	extreme, beyond	ultra-modern, ultrasound
un-	adj, 分词	not, opposite	uncertain, unexpected
un-	verbs	reverse action	untie, undress
under-	verbs, 分词	too little	underestimate, under-developed

表 A.3: 主要前缀 (Continued)

前缀	主要加于	通常意义	例子
uni-	adj, nouns	one	unilateral, unicycle
vice-	nouns	deputy	vice-chairman

表 A.4: 主要后缀

后缀	主要加于	词性	通常意义	例子
-(a)ble	verbs	adj	can be (done)	washable, drinkable
-age	verbs	nouns	instance of	breakage, shrinkage
-al	verbs	nouns	instance of	refusal, dismissal
-al	nouns	adj	related to	accidental
-(i)an	nouns	nouns, adj	supporter of, related to	Darwinian, republican
-(i)an	nouns	nouns, adj	citizen of	Parisian, Moroccan
-ance/ancy	adj, verbs	nouns	process/state of	reluctance, performance, expectancy
-ate	nouns	verbs	causative	orchestrate, chlorinate
-ation	verbs	nouns	process/state of	exploration, starvation
-ation	verbs	nouns	product of	organisation, foundation
-centric	nouns	adj	centred on	Eurocentric
-ed	nouns	adj	having	wooded, pointed, blue-eyed
-ee	verbs	nouns	object of verb	payee, employee
-en	adj	verbs	make, become	deafen, ripen, harden
-ence/ency	adj, verbs	nouns	process/state of	independence, presidency
-er	nouns	nouns	belonging to	teenager, Londoner
-er/or	verbs	nouns	person/thing that does	writer, driver, starter, editor
-ese	place-nouns	nouns, adj	inhabitant/language of	Chinese, Vietnamese
-ess	nouns	nouns	female	lioness, waitress
-ette	nouns	nouns	small	kitchenette
-ful	nouns	nouns	amount held in	spoonful, cupful
-ful	nouns	adj	full of, providing	useful, helpful
-hood	nouns	nouns	quality, group, time of	brotherhood, childhood
-ic(al)	nouns	adj	related to	artistic, typical
-ify	adj, nouns	verbs	causative: make	simplify, electrify
-ing	nouns	nouns	quantity of material	carpeting, tubing
-ing	nouns	nouns	activity	farming, surfing

<u>264</u> 附录 A 图表

表 A.4: 主要后缀 (Continued)

后缀	主要加于	词性	通常意义	例子
-ise	adj, nouns	verbs	various	modernise, symbolise
-ize				
-ish	adj, nouns	adj	rather (like)	greenish, childish
-ish	place-nouns	adj	inhabitant of, language of	Scottish, Turkish
-ism	nouns	nouns	belief, practice	communism, impressionism
-ist	nouns	nouns, adj	practitioner of	pianist, racist
-ity	adj	nouns	quality of	elasticity, falsity
-ive	verbs	adj	can do, does	attractive, selective
-less	nouns	adj	without	careless, homeless
-like	nouns	adj	like	childlike
-ly	nouns	adj	with the quality of	friendly, motherly
-ly	adj	adv	in an (adjective) way	calmly, slowly
-ment	verbs	nouns	process/result of	government, arrangement
-ness	adj	nouns	quality of	meanness, happiness
-ocracy	nouns	nouns	government by	democracy
-ology	nouns	nouns	study of	sociology
-ous	nouns	adj	having	virtuous, ambitious
-phile	nouns	nouns	lover of	Anglophile
-phobe	nouns	nouns	hater, fearer of	Anglophobe
-phobia	nouns	nouns	irrational fear of	arachnophobia (fear of spiders)
-proof	nouns	adj	protected/-ing against	bullet-proof, waterproof
-ship	nouns	nouns	status, state, quality of	friendship, dictatorship
-ward	adj	adj	towards	backward, northward
-ward(s)	adj	adv	towards	backwards, northward(s)
<b>-</b> y	nouns	adj	like, characterised by	creamy, wealthy

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>a</sup> 以 -ic 或 -ical 结尾的 adj,其 adv 都以 -ically 结尾。常见的例外只有 publicly。

## 索引

;,分号,17	名词性(自由)关系从句, 197
	后指 cataphoric reference, 35
介词后置, 143	后置修饰 post-modification, 243
概念	复合句 complex, 173
句子关系从句 (SENTENTIAL REL-	外置主语, 240
ATIVE CLAUSE), 218	外置主语 extraposition, 240
独立属格 the independent genitive,	多重句 multiple sentences, 173
29	定语 attributive, 89
限制性关系分句, 215	定语从句 attributive clause, 243
上升宾语 raised object, 241	实景所指 situational reference, 35
中心成分 Head, 243	小品词 particle, 233
介词动词 prepositional verb, 233	属格所有格 the genitive, 28
体 aspect, 43	无动词从句 verb-less clause, 190
倒装 inversion, 250	时 tense, 43
先行词 antecedent reference, 35	比较从句 comparative clauses, 190
关系从句 relative clauses, 190	状语从句 adverbial clauses, 190
关系副词从句 relative adverb clauses,	现在分词 present participle, 81
213	短语-介词动词 phrasal-prepositional,
准并列连词 quasi-coordinators, 184	233
分裂不定式 split infinite, 123	短语动词 phrasal verb, 233
分裂句 cleft sentence, 252	简单句 simple sentences, 173
分词形容词 partical adjectives, 84	联合句 compound, 173
前指 anaphoric reference, 35	补足语 complementation, 11
前置 Fronting, 249	表语 predicative, 89
前置修饰 premodification, 89	词法 morphology, xix
动词短语 verb phrase, 47	谓部 predicate, 47
句法 syntax, xix	谓体 predication, 47
名词性从句 nominal clauses, 190	过去分词 past participle, 81

266 索引

```
过去时 WERE-虚拟式 were-subjunctive,
132
近指, 35
远指, 35
递差 gradience, 11
限制性修饰语, 215
限定性从句 finite clause, 190
限定性动词, finite verbs, 189
限定词!中位, 26
限定词!前位, 26
限定词!后位, 26
非限制性修饰语, 215
非限制性关系分句, 215
非限定性从句 non-finite clause, 190
非限定性动词, non-finite verbs, 189
```

类指,27